

# Legal English – Level 3

Afghanistan Rule of Law Project  
Kabul, Afghanistan

**Abedin Jamal**  
**2007**



# **An Introduction to Legal English**

## ***Materials Developer***

**Abedin Jamal  
Afghanistan Rule of Law Project**

## ***Project Manager***

**Patricia McLaughlin  
Afghanistan Rule of Law Project**

## ***Designed by***

**Eisa Khan Ayoob Ayoobi  
Afghanistan Rule of Law Project**

## **Table of Contents**

### **Part 1: Law in Afghanistan**

Introduction

#### **Unit One: Overview of laws of Afghanistan**

Chapter: 1. Overview of Sharia Law System

Chapter: 2. Overview of Afghan Constitutional History

#### **Unit Two: The Law-Making Process in Afghanistan**

Chapter: 3. The Loya Jirgas

Chapter: 4. The Parliament

Chapter: 5. The Ministry of Justice

Chapter: 6. The Executive Branch

Chapter: 7. The Taqnin

Chapter: 8. The Judiciary System

#### **Unit 3: The Court System in Afghanistan**

Chapter: 9. The Primary Courts

Chapter: 10. The Courts of Appeals

Chapter: 11. The Supreme Court

Chapter: 12. Special Courts

#### **Unit 4: Criminal Procedure in Afghanistan**

Chapter: 13. Crime in Afghanistan

Chapter: 14. Arrest

Chapter: 15. Proceedings Before Trial

Chapter: 16. The Trial

Chapter: 17. Sentencing Options

#### **Unit 5: Common Crimes in Afghanistan**

Chapter: 18. Homicide

Chapter: 19. Kidnapping

Chapter: 20. Rape

Chapter: 21. Assault and Battery

Chapter: 22. Abortion

Chapter: 23. Adultery

Chapter: 24. Bribery

Chapter: 25. Robbery

Chapter: 26. Drug-trafficking

#### **Answer Key**

## Introduction

### Introductory Legal English CD-Rom

As Afghanistan develops its justice sector, there will be an increasing need for legal English skills among lawyers in order to conduct legal research and access international legal opportunities. This Introductory Legal English CD-Rom program is an effort to fill this gap. It is an introduction to legal terminology in English and can be used as a self study tool or as a complement to a course. It presents basic legal vocabulary in readings that center around Afghan and American legal contexts. The CD-Rom is designed for high- to intermediate- level students of English who are interested in legal fields. Potential students include students and professors of law and Sharia faculties, lawyers and judges. Its goal is to improve basic legal terminology in English and increase basic reading and critical thinking skills.

The CD-Rom consists of units that focus on major topics found in criminal law in both Afghanistan and the United States. Each unit consists of:

- Opening Vocabulary
- Pre-Listening Vocabulary
- Listening for Comprehension
- Listening for Details
- Reading
- Reading Comprehension
- Grammar exercises

### Opening Vocabulary and Pre-Listening Vocabulary

Each chapter opens with a short overview of the major vocabulary that will be presented in both the listening lectures and the readings in each chapter. In the CD-Rom, students will be able to click on the word and the meaning in Dari will pop up. In the softcopy book, the Dari translation will be written underneath each English word. After students have reviewed the vocabulary for the chapter, there is a pre-listening vocabulary exercise. The purpose of this exercise is for students to read the new vocabulary in a legal context and then match the definition with the appropriate word. Students are encouraged to *not* use dictionaries to complete these exercises.

### Listening for Comprehension

After students have familiarized themselves with the new legal vocabulary, they can move on to the two parts of the listening section. In the Listening for Comprehension section, students should first read the general questions about the lecture. These are usually broad questions that focus on main ideas. Students then click on the lecture and listen. As they listen to the lecture, they can take notes and then answer the questions. If the students are using the softcopy book, the teacher will need to read the reading passage out loud while students take notes.

## Listening for Details

After listening to the lecture once, students then listen to the same lecture a second time. This time, they should skim over the questions and listen for specific details about the lecture. With the CD-Rom, in the second listening section, Listening for Details, they can choose the correct answer from the multiple choice menu. If they are using the book, it is advised that they write the answers on a separate piece of paper, so that other students can use the book in the future.

## Reading

After listening to the lecture, the students should be familiar with its general content. Now, students should read the same passage themselves. Students can note the time that they begin and end each passage. After each passage, they will then answer the reading comprehension questions. For many of the questions, they will need to go back into the reading to look for a specific detail or piece of information. Students will need to have over 70 percent of their answers correct on the CD- Rom to proceed to the next section.

## Grammar

After each reading section, the student then moves on to the grammar section of the chapter. Each grammar section focuses on one main grammar point. First there is a detailed explanation of the grammar chapter with an example. After this, there are fill-in-the-blank questions for the students to practice the grammar point. Each grammar point is embedded in a sentence that usually has a legal context, so as to reinforce legal vocabulary.

## About the Writer

Abedin Jamal is an assistant English professor at Kabul University and a recipient of a Fulbright Scholarship in Linguistics. Using the Ministry of Justice website and the Official Gazettes, he was able to create the legal material on the Afghan legal system. Material on the American legal system was researched and reviewed by U.S. lawyers at Afghanistan Rule of Law Project (ARoLP).

## Unit One:

### Overview of Laws of Afghanistan

## Chapter One

### Overview of Sharia Law System

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| #  | Word             | Meaning                  | #  | Word            | Meaning     |
|----|------------------|--------------------------|----|-----------------|-------------|
| 1  | Primary (adj)    | اصلی، عمده               | 12 | Prayer (n)      | نماز، دعا   |
| 2  | Source (n)       | منبع                     | 13 | Fast (n)        | روزه        |
| 3  | Disciple (n)     | شاگرد، مرید              | 14 | Kin (n)         | خویشاوند    |
| 4  | Scholar (n)      | دانشمند                  | 15 | Charity (n)     | صدقه، خیرات |
| 5  | Majority (n)     | اکثریت                   | 16 | Pilgrimage (n)  | زیارت       |
| 6  | To fail (v)      | ناکام ماندن، کامیاب نشدن | 17 | Transaction (n) | معامله      |
| 7  | To maintain (v)  | حفظ کردن، ادامه دادن     | 18 | Endowment (n)   | وقف، اعطا   |
| 8  | Guidance (n)     | رهنمود                   | 19 | Inheritance (n) | ارث         |
| 9  | To mention (v)   | ذکر کردن، اشاره کردن     | 20 | Warfare (n)     | محاربه، جنگ |
| 10 | Ritual (n)       | تشریفات و رسوم مذهبی     | 21 | Lash (n)        | دره، شلاق   |
| 11 | Purification (n) | تطهیر                    |    |                 |             |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- C     1. The Red Cross's **primary** concern is to preserve and protect human life.
2. According to government **sources**, many MP's are worried about this issue.
3. The young man calls himself a **disciple** of the famous Sufi, but his actions are contrary to what the Sufi says.
4. He is a great **scholar** of criminology. He has written several books about crimes.
5. The **majority** of our employees have university degrees. Only five percent of our personnel don't have university degrees.
6. She performed all the religious **rituals** at the ceremony.



- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Muslims must observe **fasts** once a year during the Ramadan. During this month they cannot eat from sunrise to sunset.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. People tend to give money to **charity** at Eid time. Most of the money collected is given to the poor.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The school has received an **endowment** of 50,000 Afghanis to buy new books for the library. The money was given by a charity organization.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. When Ahmad's father died, he inherited all of his money and property. The total **inheritance** he received was worth around 2,000,000 Afghanis.
- a. a number greater than half of the total
  - b. a system of giving money, food or help free to those who need
  - c. more important than anything else; the main point
  - d. a person who follows the ideas and principles of someone famous and tries to live the way they did
  - e. money or objects that someone gives you when they die
  - f. someone or something that supplies information
  - g. a set of fixed actions and words performed regularly, especially as part of a ceremony
  - h. a person who studies an academic subject in great detail, and is considered an expert
  - i. money that is given in order to provide an income
  - j. a period of time when you eat no food



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of Sharia Law and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is Sharia law?
2. What is Hadith?
3. What is Sharia law divided into?







### Listening for Details

Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.

1. What is Sharia law based on?  
(A) The Koran  
(B) Jurisprudence  
(C) Sunna, Ijma and Qeyas  
(D) Both (A) and (C)
2. What is Ijma?  
(A) The teachings of the Prophet Mohammad and his disciples  
(B) A decision that the majority of Muslim scholars agree upon based on the Koran and Sunna  
(C) A law passed by legislators  
(D) None of the above
3. Which one of the following is not true about acts of worship in Islam?  
(A) Fasting  
(B) Pilgrimage to Mecca  
(C) Qeyas  
(D) Prayers
4. What will happen if the conditions of *had*, *qesas*, and *ta'azir* is not fulfilled or the case is dropped?  
(A) The provisions of other laws will be used  
(B) The accused will be released  
(C) The accused will be sentenced to death  
(D) Both (A) and (C)



### Reading

Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.

The law in Afghanistan is based on the Hanafi school of jurisprudence, which states that Sharia law – the Islamic legal system – is based on the Koran, Hadith, Ijma and Qiyas. Sharia is based primarily on the Koran and, secondly, on the Hadith, or the collection of **teachings**, actions, and sayings of the Prophet Mohammad. The third



source of Sharia law is known as the Ijma, which is the body of rules developed by Islamic scholars. Simply, Ijma is a decision made by the majority of Muslim scholars based on the Koran and Hadith. When these three main sources on their own fail to provide enough guidance, Islamic scholars can make a decision by comparing one case to another based on the Koran and Hadith. This system of comparison is called Qiyas.

Sharia law is divided into two main sections: acts of worship and actions between people.

1. The five pillars of Islam:
  1. Ritual Purification
  2. Prayers
  3. Fasts
  4. Charities
  5. Pilgrimage to Mecca (Hajj)
2. Relationships between people include:
  1. Financial **Transactions**
  2. Endowments (giving money for hospitals, schools, etc.)
  3. Laws of Inheritance
  4. Marriage, **Divorce**, and Child Care
  5. Foods and Drinks (including ritual slaughtering and hunting)
  6. Penal Punishments ("hudud", "qesas" and "ta'azir")
  7. Warfare and Peace
  8. Judicial Matters (including witnesses and types of evidence)

There are three major punishments for crimes under Islamic law: "had", "qesas" and "ta'azir". "Had" is defined as "a punishment in which its form, extent and character is defined by Sharia law." For example, the "had" for adultery between an unmarried man and an unmarried woman is 100 lashes. "Qesas" is defined as "a punishment where the criminal's sentence must be **equivalent** to their crime." For instance, the "qesas" for murdering someone is death sentence administered by the kin of the victim. "Ta'azir" is defined as a "punishment whose form or quantity has not been determined by Sharia and is left to the decision of the judge," such as prison, cash fines, and lashings. The number of lashings should be less than in "had." The Penal Code of Afghanistan, however, maintains that if the conditions for the above are not fulfilled, or the case of "had," "qesas," or "ta'azir" is dropped, the provisions of the Penal Code and other enacted laws will be used.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

Read the following questions and circle the best answer.

1. What is the law in Afghanistan based on?  
(A) Sharia law  
(B) Jurisprudence  
(C) Shafi-ee school  
(D) School of law
2. What is the primary source of Islamic law?  
(A) Ijma  
(B) Qeyas  
(C) Hadith  
(D) Koran
3. In paragraph one, the Hadith is  
(A) School of Law  
(B) The third Source  
(C) The teachings of Prophet Mohammad  
(D) The fourth Source of Sharia law
4. In paragraph one, the word **teachings** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Education  
(B) Lesson  
(C) Philosophy and doctrine  
(D) Knowledge
5. What will happen when the Koran, Sunna and Ijma fail to provide guidance in Hanafi jurisprudence?  
(A) The judge will decide using his own knowledge  
(B) The opinion of a great Muslim scholar will be asked  
(C) "Qeyas" will be used  
(D) None of the above are true
6. In paragraph two, the word **transaction** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Issue  
(B) Cooperation  
(C) Business deal  
(D) Activity
7. In paragraph two, the word **divorce** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Ending a contract  
(B) Marriage



- (C) Ending a marriage through legal process  
(D) Signing a contract
8. In paragraph three, the word **equivalent** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Different  
(B) The same  
(C) Almost equal  
(D) Similar on the surface
9. What is "had"?  
(A) A crime whose punishment is not specified in Sharia law  
(B) A crime whose punishment is not less than one year and not more than five years  
(C) A crime whose punishment is specified in Sharia law  
(D) A crime whose punishment is always stoning to death
10. What is "qesas"?  
(A) A crime whose punishment is not less than 100 lashes  
(B) A crime whose punishment is not specified in Sharia law  
(C) A crime whose punishment is less than that of "had"  
(D) A crime whose punishment is an equivalent of the committed crime

## Grammar

### Auxiliaries and Modals

| Auxiliaries and Modals                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Examples                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The verbs "to be" (am, is, are, was, were, been and be), "to have," "and "to do," when used with ordinary verbs to make tenses, passive forms, questions, and negatives, are called <b>auxiliary verbs</b> or <b>helping verbs</b> . | <b>Do</b> you want to report the case to the police?<br><b>Is</b> the arrested man aware of charges against him? |
| The verbs "can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should, must, and ought to" are called <b>modal verbs</b> or <b>modals</b> .                                                                                                  | The police <b>must</b> catch the criminal.                                                                       |
| The modals "can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should, must, and ought to" take no -s in the third person singular; they have no infinitive and -ing forms.                                                                 | The suspect <b>might</b> cooperate with the police.                                                              |

## Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct auxiliaries and modals to complete the following sentences.

1. The justices in the Supreme Court \_\_\_\_\_ discussing the issue raised by the president. (is, are, am)

2. The police \_\_\_\_\_ not ruled him out as a suspect. (should, could, have)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ you think he is innocent? (do, did, does)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ they apply the Sharia law in a case like this? (are, can, were)
5. The government \_\_\_\_\_ punish those who were involved in the killings. (is, do, should)
6. The law in Afghanistan \_\_\_\_\_ based on Hanafi jurisprudence. (can, is, will)
7. The Supreme Court \_\_\_\_\_ ruled his action illegal. (has, might, would)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Sharia law applicable to this situation? (is, can, will)
9. They knew there \_\_\_\_\_ be a riot if the criminal was not tried according to the schedule. (should, may, would)
10. There \_\_\_\_\_ be some evidence to suggest she's guilty, but it's hardly conclusive. (will, was, may)

## Chapter Two

### Overview of Afghan Constitutional History

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word             | Meaning        | #  | Word               | Meaning       |
|---|------------------|----------------|----|--------------------|---------------|
| 1 | Prominent (adj)  | برجسته         | 10 | To preside (v)     | ریاست کردن    |
| 2 | Gathering (n)    | گردهمایی       | 11 | Monarchy (n)       | سلطنت مطلقه   |
| 3 | Likewise (adv)   | همچنان         | 12 | Assassination (n)  | ترور          |
| 4 | Declaration (n)  | اعلان          | 13 | To disband (v)     | منحل کردن     |
| 5 | Independence (n) | استقلال        | 14 | Occupation (n)     | اشغال، استیلا |
| 6 | Enactment (n)    | تصویب          | 15 | To devastate (v)   | ویران کردن    |
| 7 | Bicameral (adj)  | دو مجلسه       | 16 | Assembly (n)       | مجلس          |
| 8 | Nobles (n)       | اعیان          | 17 | Representative (n) | نماینده       |
| 9 | Reign (n)        | سلطنت، حکمرانی | 18 | To ratify (v)      | تصویب کردن    |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The government should play a more **prominent** role in promoting human rights and civil society.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. There will be a **gathering** of world leaders in London next month to discuss global warming and peace in the Middle East.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Members of Parliament must make a **declaration** of their business interests.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Afghanistan gained its **independence** from Great Britain in 1919.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Since the **enactment** of the new anti-corruption law, corruption in the governmental organizations is half of what it was.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Afghanistan has a **bicameral** legislature – the House of People and the House of Elders.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The new manager will **preside** over the meeting. He will start the meeting with the accomplishments of the company.



- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Saudi Arabia is still a **monarchy**. The king holds the ultimate power.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. He denied any involvement in the **assassination** of the opposition leader. He said that the government might be involved in the murder.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. She formed a political group that **disbanded** a year later.

- a. an announcement, often one that is written and official
- b. very well known and important
- c. with two parts, such as the Senate and the House of Representatives in the United States
- d. when people gather and form a group
- e. to stop being a group
- f. not controlled by another person or country
- g. the government system of having a king or queen
- h. killing someone famous or important
- i. to be in charge of a formal meeting or ceremony
- j. putting something into action, such as a law



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of Afghanistan's constitution. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is a constitution?
2. What was the first constitution of Afghanistan called?
3. Who was the first Afghan president?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. When was the first constitution adopted?
  - (A) 1964
  - (B) 1927
  - (C) 1919
  - (D) 1923
2. What was the significance of the 1973 constitution?
  - (A) Introduction of a constitutional monarchy
  - (B) Introduction of a republic system of government



- (C) Putting an end to monarchy
  - (D) Both (B) and (C)
3. When was the current constitution ratified?
- (A) January 4, 2004
  - (B) January 4, 2001
  - (C) January 26, 2004
  - (D) January 26, 2001
4. How many chapters and articles does the current constitution have?
- (A) 10 Chapters and 166 articles
  - (B) 12 Chapters and 160 articles
  - (C) 10 Chapters and 160 articles
  - (D) 12 Chapters and 166 articles



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

For many years in Afghanistan, prominent elders have formed formal gatherings to discuss their social, religious, political and financial issues. Likewise, after the declaration of independence from Great Britain in 1919, King Amanullah organized a Jirga (assembly), which resulted in the **adoption** of the first Afghan constitution called “Nezamnama Asasi.” With the enactment of Nezamnama in 1923, the first constitutional assembly, called “The Council of State,” was put in order. Based on Nezamnama, the people of Afghanistan were included in the policy-making of their social and political life for the first time. Another Loya Jirga was called by King Amanullah in 1927. This five day Jirga, among other things, changed the name of the Jirga from “The Council of State” to “The Council of Nation.”

The Constitution of 1931, which was adopted during the reign of King Mohammad Nader, called for the election of a new bicameral national assembly, Majlis Shorai Melli (House of National Assembly) and Majlis Ayan (House of Nobles). Due to political, social, and economical changes during the reign of King Mohammad Zahir, the Constitution of 1964 was adopted. The **focus** of this constitution was more on people and democracy. The national assembly, as a bicameral assembly consisting of Wolesi Jirga (House of People) and Meshrano Jirga (House of Elders), started its activity in 1965. The key feature of the 1964 constitution was that the King could no longer preside over the national assembly; as a result, the constitutional monarchy was officially introduced.

The Constitution of 1973 put an end to the monarchy and a first **republic** system of government. It was introduced by President Daud. After the assassination of President





Daud; however, the National Assembly was disbanded and the communist regime took power in 1978 followed by the U.S.S.R. invasion in 1979. Dark days of war and foreign occupation disrupted any form of national democracy in Afghanistan. Years of fighting and civil war devastated the system of government in the country.

Finally, with the Bonn Agreement of 2001, a new constitution along with the democratic election of a president and the establishment of a new National Assembly was approved. The current constitution of the Islamic Republic of Afghanistan was agreed upon by more than 500 Afghan men and women representatives from across the country at the constitutional Loya Jirga on January 4, 2004. The constitution was formally ratified by President Hamid Karzai at a **ceremony** in Kabul on January 26, 2004. The new constitution contains 12 chapters and 160 articles.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

Read the following questions and circle the best answer.

1. What happened in 1919?  
(A) The first king of Afghanistan was chosen  
(B) Declaration of Independence from Great Britain  
(C) Amanullah Khan was dethroned  
(D) The first president of Afghanistan was elected
2. What was the first constitution called?  
(A) Jirga  
(B) Assembly  
(C) Constitution  
(D) Nezamnama Asasi
3. In paragraph one, the word **adoption** is closest in meaning to  
(A) To choose  
(B) To accept to use something new  
(C) To agree  
(D) To assume
4. How many Loya Jirgas did King Amanullah convene?  
(A) Four  
(B) Two  
(C) Three  
(D) One
5. In paragraph two, the word **focus** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Very important  
(B) Center of attention



- (C) Interest  
(D) Significance
6. What was the key feature of the 1964 constitution?  
(A) The king called for a referendum  
(B) The monarchy become stronger  
(C) Women were allowed to vote  
(D) Constitutional monarchy was introduced
7. In paragraph three, the word **republic** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Monarchy  
(B) A system of government ruled by a king or queen  
(C) A system of government ruled by a queen and representatives of the people  
(D) A system of government ruled by a elected president and representative of the people
8. Who was the first president of Afghanistan?  
(A) President Karzai  
(B) King Amanullah Khan  
(C) President Daud  
(D) President Mujadadi
9. When was the Bonn Agreement signed?  
(A) 2001  
(B) 2002  
(C) 2003  
(D) 2004
10. In paragraph four, the word **ceremony** is closest in meaning to  
(A) A tradition  
(B) An official function  
(C) An informal gathering  
(D) A party

## Grammar

### Questions

| 'Yes/No' Questions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Examples                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| We usually make question by changing the word order: we put the first auxiliary verb (AV) before the subject (S).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | I <b>will</b> go to Bamian next week.<br><b>Will</b> I go to Bamian next week?                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div> <b>S + AV</b><br/> Ahmad will<br/> Ahmad has<br/> I can<br/> The man was<br/> You live<br/> The film begins </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> -----&gt;<br/> →<br/> →<br/> →<br/> →<br/> → </div> <div> <b>AV + S</b><br/> <b>Will</b> Ahmad...?<br/> <b>Has</b> Ahmad...?<br/> <b>Can</b> I ...?<br/> <b>Was</b> the man...?<br/> <b>Do</b> you live...?<br/> <b>Does</b> the film...? </div> </div> | <b>Will</b> Ahmad help us with this problem?<br><b>Has</b> Ahmad broken the law?<br><b>Can</b> I talk to the Police Chief?<br><b>Was</b> the man involved in that crime?<br><b>Do</b> you live in Kabul?<br><b>Does</b> the film begin on schedule? |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>You sold</p> <p><b>Did you sell...?</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>We usually answer the above questions with 'Yes....' or 'No.....'</li> <li>The above questions are always followed by "a question mark"</li> </ul> <p>We use negative questions to show surprise or when we expect someone to agree with us.</p> | <p><b>Did you sell the stolen car?</b></p> <p><b>Did you call the police?</b><br/>Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.</p> <p>Have the police arrived at the crime scene yet?</p> <p><b>Haven't</b> we met somewhere before?<br/>Yes, I think we have.</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### Grammar Exercise

Circle the correct 'Yes/No' answer to complete the following questions.

- Has the murder been reported to the police? (Yes, it does. No, it wasn't. Yes, it has.)
- Do you know anything about the 2004 Loya Jirga? (Yes, I do, No, I haven't. Yes, I have.)
- Will the president veto the new immigration law? (Yes, he should. Yes, he would. Yes, he will.)
- Has the parliament passed the new abortion law? (Yes, it had. No, it hasn't. Yes, it has.)
- Is the system of government in Afghanistan a constitutional monarchy? (No, it isn't. Yes, it isn't. Yes, it was.)
- Did they draft the bill? (No, they haven't. No, they weren't. No, they didn't.)
- Was he the king of Afghanistan? (Yes, he was. No, he was. Yes, he wasn't.)
- Can the president of Afghanistan have a dual citizenship? (Yes, he have. No, he can't. Yes, he can't)
- Does Afghanistan have a bicameral National Assembly? (Yes, it does. No, it does. Yes, it doesn't)
- Were they able to save the country from chaos by convening the Loya Jirga? (Yes, they did. No, they didn't. Yes, they were.)

## Unit Two:

### Law-making Process in Afghanistan

## Chapter Three

### The Loya Jirga

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word              | Meaning     | #  | Word               | Meaning        |
|---|-------------------|-------------|----|--------------------|----------------|
| 1 | Customary (adj)   | مروج، مرسوم | 10 | Consultation (n)   | مشاوره         |
| 2 | Tradition (n)     | رسم، عرف    | 11 | Vital (adj)        | حياتي، اساسي   |
| 3 | To serve (v)      | خدمت کردن   | 12 | Deeply (adv)       | عميقاً، شديد   |
| 4 | Conflict (n)      | کشمکش       | 13 | To participate (v) | اشتراک کردن    |
| 5 | Solution (n)      | راه حل      | 14 | To declare war (v) | اعلام جنگ کردن |
| 6 | Mechanism (n)     | مکانیزم     | 15 | Treaty (n)         | ميثاق، معاهده  |
| 7 | Approximate (adj) | تقریبی      | 16 | To ratify (v)      | تصویب کردن     |
| 8 | Ethnic (adj)      | قومی، نژادی | 17 | To adopt (v)       | اتخاذ کردن     |
| 9 | To convene (v)    | برگزار کردن | 18 | Latest (adj)       | تازه ترین      |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. In many provinces of Afghanistan, it is a **tradition** for brides to wear white gowns.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. She has **served** on the committee for the last fifteen years.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Counselors help you talk through your problems, but they don't give you any **solutions**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The **approximate** cost of the computer will be about 10,000 Afghanis.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The **conflicts** between the different ethnic groups in the country exploded into civil war.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The Loya Jirga **convened** in 2004 and ratified the constitution.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. After **consultations** with our accountants, we've known how to cut costs within the company.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. He criticized government policies in his **latest** TV interview.

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. Afghanistan signed a **treaty** with neighboring countries to fight against terrorism in the region.

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. The new tax would force companies to **adopt** energy-saving measures.

- a. the answer to a problem
- b. to accept or start to use something new
- c. a way of behaving or a belief which has been established for a long time
- d. being the newest or most recent or modern
- e. a meeting to discuss something or to get advice
- f. to work for; to do your duty for
- g. to gather for a meeting
- h. a written agreement between two or more countries formally approved and signed by their leaders
- i. not completely accurate but close
- j. an active disagreement between people with opposing opinions or principles



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of the Loya Jirga and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is the Loya Jirga?
2. What happened in the first Loya Jirga?
3. What are the major reasons for convening a Loya Jirga?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. What is the approximate equivalent of jirga among other Afghan ethnic groups?
  - (A) Tribal jirga
  - (B) Local jirga
  - (C) Shora
  - (D) Anjuman



2. What is special about the 1964 and 1976 Loya Jirgas?
  - (A) Many Afghans participated in those Loya Jirgas
  - (B) The women representatives participated in those Loya Jirgas for the first time
  - (C) They were the most important Loya Jirgas in Afghan history
  - (D) The first king of Afghanistan was chosen
3. What happened in the 1747 Loya Jirga?
  - (A) The president of Afghanistan was chosen
  - (B) The constitution of Afghanistan was ratified
  - (C) The king of Afghanistan was chosen
  - (D) The war against USSR invasion was approved
4. What was the objective of the Loya Jirga in 2004?
  - (A) To choose the president
  - (B) To sign a treaty
  - (C) To ratify the constitution
  - (D) To put an end to the war



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

Customary laws and traditions have been in effect for many centuries in Afghanistan and they have served as an alternative to statutory law for managing conflicts. Among the Pashtuns, “jirgas” have traditionally been the main institution for settling disputes at the village and tribal levels. The approximate equivalent among other Afghan ethnic groups is the “shora.”

The tradition of the jirga is as old as the civilization of Afghanistan itself. Jirga means the gathering of people; it also means consultation. The jirga can be convened among any sized tribal organization, from the smallest families to an **entire** tribe or nation. There are several kinds of jirgas in Afghanistan, such as local jirgas, tribal jirgas, and Loya Jirga. The Loya Jirga is the largest gathering of representatives of people from all over Afghanistan who make decisions on vital matters. The Loya Jirga, in Afghan political culture, means a **grand** assembly of Afghan tribal leaders, elders, and others who gather to discuss vital national issues and make collective decisions.

Because Afghanistan has convened Loya Jirgas for centuries, the jirga terminology is deeply rooted in Afghan culture and history. The best known Loya Jirga in Afghan history is the Loya Jirga in Kandahar in 1747, when **various** Afghan tribes selected Ahmad Shah Durani (Ahmad Shah Baba) as the first king of modern Afghanistan.



Also in 1964 and 1976, Loya Jirgas had a special place in Afghan modern history as women representatives participated in them.

Afghan populations see the Loya Jirga as a national body of their representatives empowered to act on **their** behalf and make the right decisions. The Loya Jirga is only held periodically to decide important national issues that are central to the social and political order, sovereignty, and national **unity** of Afghanistan. In the history of modern Afghanistan, some of the main reasons for the convening of a Loya Jirga have been to select a new ruler, to declare war, to adopt treaties of peace, and to adopt a new constitution. The latest Loya Jirga was convened in 2004 to ratify Afghanistan's new constitution.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, it can be inferred that customary laws have been in effect
  - (A) in the absence of the government authority
  - (B) as alternative to statutory laws
  - (C) because people of Afghanistan are traditional
  - (D) because people don't regard the statutory laws
2. In paragraph two, the word **entire** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Part
  - (B) Incomplete
  - (C) Whole
  - (D) The most important part of something
3. In paragraph two, it is implied that jirgas
  - (A) Are relatively new in Afghanistan
  - (B) Are old traditions that are no longer practiced
  - (C) Have been common in Afghanistan for many centuries
  - (D) Are not important
4. In paragraph two, the word **grand** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Wonderful
  - (B) Important
  - (C) Useful
  - (D) Small
5. In paragraph two, what is the objective of convening a Loya Jirga?
  - (A) Choosing a president
  - (B) Discussing important national issues and making a collective decision
  - (C) Drafting a new law





- (D) Both (A) and (B)
6. In paragraph three, the word **various** is closest in meaning to
    - (A) A few
    - (B) Some
    - (C) Different and diverse
    - (D) The same or similar
  7. In paragraph four, what does the word **their** refer to
    - (A) Representatives
    - (B) Decisions
    - (C) Afghan populations
    - (D) Circumstances
  8. In paragraph Four, the word **unity** is closest in meaning to
    - (A) Government
    - (B) Workers union
    - (C) In agreement
    - (D) One
  9. In paragraph four, some of the main reasons for convening Loya Jirgas in the history of Afghanistan have been to
    - (A) To declare war and adopt treaties of peace
    - (B) To select a king
    - (C) To adopt a new constitution
    - (D) All of the above are true
  10. It can be inferred from the lecture that in the history of Afghanistan, Loya Jirgas have played a
    - (A) Vital role
    - (B) Unimportant role
    - (C) Slightly good role
    - (D) All of the above are true

## Grammar

### Adjectives

| Adjectives                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Examples:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>An adjective</b> is a word used to describe a noun or pronoun. In other words, an adjective adds something to the meaning of a noun or pronoun.</p> <p>An adjective is either used before a noun or as a predicate after the verb.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> An adjective is neither singular nor plural. A final -s is never added to an adjective.</p> | <p>a policeman = a <b>tired</b> policeman<br/>a policewoman = a <b>young</b> policewoman</p> <p>A <b>good</b> policeman gave me the direction.<br/>The <b>policeman</b> was <b>good</b>.</p> <p>a good lawyer<br/>good lawyers<br/>goods lawyers (incorrect)</p> |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>Kinds of Adjectives:</b></p> <p><b>Descriptive Adjectives</b> ( Adjectives of Quality) show the kind or quality of a noun:</p> <p><b>Quantity Adjectives</b> show how much of a noun is meant:</p> <p><b>Numeral Adjectives</b> (Adjectives of Number) show how many persons or things are meant, or in what order a person or thing stands. They are of three kinds:</p> <p><b>Definite Numeral Adjectives</b> show an exact number or order in a series:</p> <p><b>Indefinite Numeral Adjectives</b> do not show an exact number:</p> <p><b>Distributive Numeral Adjectives</b> refers to each one of a number at a time:</p> <p><b>Demonstrative Adjectives</b> points out which person or thing is meant:</p> <p><b>Interrogative Adjectives</b> ask a question and they are always followed by a noun:</p> <p><b>Emphasizing Adjectives</b> are used for emphasis.</p> | <p>large, honest, old, new, good, healthy<br/>This is a <b>new</b> prison.</p> <p>much, some, little, whole<br/>The police had <b>little</b> evidence.</p> <p><b>Definite</b> Numeral Adjective<br/><b>Indefinite</b> Numeral Adjective<br/><b>Distributive</b> Numeral Adjective</p> <p>one, two three, first, second, third<br/>There is one <b>apple</b>.<br/>He is the <b>first</b> person to be convicted of robbery in this town.</p> <p>all, no, many, few, some, any, several<br/><b>Several</b> people were arrested by the police.</p> <p>each, every, either, neither<br/><b>Neither</b> accusation is true.</p> <p>this, that, these, those<br/><b>This</b> meeting hall was built twenty years ago.</p> <p>which house, whose car, what manner<br/><b>Whose</b> car is stolen?</p> <p>own, very<br/>I saw it with my <b>own</b> eyes.<br/>That is the <b>very</b> thing we want.</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### Grammar Exercise

*In the following sentences, circle the correct answer which is true for the underlined words.*

1. The situation is very serious. Three people have been murdered and ten others were beaten to death. (emphasizing adjective, descriptive adjective, none of the two)

2. The thief who jumped off the wall had a **severe** leg injury. (descriptive adjective, emphasizing adjective, adjective of quantity)
3. The 2004 Loya Jirga was convened to discuss a **vital** issue for Afghanistan. (descriptive adjective, demonstrative adjective, none of the two)
4. The police had **sufficient** evidence to convict him of larceny. (descriptive adjective, adjective of quantity, numeral adjective)
5. That is the **very** thing the people are opposed to. (demonstrative adjective, emphasizing adjective, none of the two)
6. The people of Afghanistan have been holding jirgas to discuss and solve their **own** problems. (descriptive adjective, adjective of quantity, emphasizing adjective)
7. The best known Loya Jirga in Afghan history is the one held in 1747 in Kandahar during which **various** Afghan tribes selected Ahmad Shah Durani as the first king of modern Afghanistan. (definite numeral adjective, indefinite numeral adjective, distributive numeral adjective)
8. The **latest** Loya Jirga was convened in 2004 to ratify the Afghanistan New Constitution. (demonstrative adjective, descriptive adjective, numeral adjective)
9. The approximate equivalent of "jirga" among other **Afghan** ethnic groups is the "shora." (descriptive adjective, adjective of quantity, emphasizing adjective)
10. The Loya Jirga is the **largest** gathering of representatives of people from all over Afghanistan who decide vital matters. (adjective of quantity, descriptive adjective, demonstrative adjective)

## Chapter Four

### The Parliament

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word                   | Meaning       | #  | Word                | Meaning      |
|---|------------------------|---------------|----|---------------------|--------------|
| 1 | National Assembly (n)  | شورای ملی     | 10 | Bill (n)            | لایحه قانونی |
| 2 | To comprise (v)        | در بر داشتن   | 11 | To endorse (v)      | توشیح کردن   |
| 3 | Seat (n)               | کرسی          | 12 | To conduct (v)      | اداره کردن   |
| 4 | To allocate (v)        | اختصاص دادن   | 13 | Oversight (n)       | نظارت        |
| 5 | Provincial Council (n) | شورای ولایتی  | 14 | To question (v)     | پرسیدن       |
| 6 | Expert (n)             | متخصص         | 15 | Response (n)        | پاسخ         |
| 7 | Legislative (adj)      | مقننه         | 16 | Supervision (n)     | نظارت        |
| 8 | Welfare (n)            | رفاه، بهزیستی | 17 | To be vested in (v) | محول کردن    |
| 9 | Supreme (adj)          | عالی، افضل    | 18 | To manifest (v)     | آشکار ساختن  |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. He is expected to lose his **seat** on the council in next month's elections.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The government is **allocating** \$10 million for health education.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The company hired four computer **experts** to help solve the problems in their database.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. These organizations have fought very hard for the rights and **welfare** of immigrants.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The present constitution gives **supreme** authority to the president.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. When a **bill** is passed in parliament it becomes law.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The minister was **questioned** by parliament about the recent events.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Management has granted a 10 percent pay raise to all employees in **response** to union pressure.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Students are not allowed to handle these chemicals unless they are under the **supervision** of a teacher.

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. Authority has been **vested in** him to implement whatever changes he sees necessary.

- a. an answer or reaction
- b. to give something to someone as their share of a total amount, for them to use in a particular way
- c. having the highest rank, level or importance
- d. to ask or interrogate a person about something
- e. a specialist
- f. an official position as a politician or member of a group of people who control something
- g. to give the power or authority officially to someone
- h. a formal statement of a planned new law that is discussed before being voted on
- i. physical and mental health and happiness of a person
- j. when someone watches a person or activity and makes certain that everything is done correctly and safely



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of the parliament and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is the Parliament?
2. What does the legislative body do?
3. What are the main duties of the Wolesi Jirga?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. How many members is the National Assembly comprised of?  
(A) 249  
(B) 102  
(C) 68  
(D) 351
2. How many seats are allocated for women out of the 249 seats in the Wolesi Jirga?



- (A) Maximum 50 percent of the seats
  - (B) Minimum 68 seats
  - (C) Minimum 17 seats
  - (D) Maximum 50 seats
3. How long will the appointed members hold office?
- (A) Four years
  - (B) Three years
  - (C) Six years
  - (D) Five years
4. Which of the following is not included in the National Assembly's scope of work?
- (A) Representation of legislative body in Afghanistan
  - (B) Interpretation of the constitution
  - (C) Supervision over the policies and programs of the government
  - (D) Passing a bill introduced by the government into law



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

The 2004 constitution introduced a new bicameral National Assembly, the Wolesi Jirga (House of People) and the Meshrano Jirga (House of Elders). The National Assembly is comprised of 351 members, 249 of which belong to the Wolesi Jirga and 102 to the Meshrano Jirga. Members of the Wolesi Jirga are elected, are at least 25 years old, and serve for a period of 5 years. Out of the 249 seats in the Wolesi Jirga, a minimum of sixty eight seats must be filled by women candidates. Members of the Meshrano Jirga are elected and **appointed** as follows: Thirty-four members are elected from provincial councils for a period of four years. Thirty-four members are elected from among members of district councils for a period of three years. Thirty-four members are appointed from among experts and experienced persons of which 17 members are women and will hold office for a period of 5 years.

As the highest legislative body, the National Assembly represents the whole nation of Afghanistan, taking into consideration the general welfare and supreme **interests** of the people. The scope of Afghanistan's National Assembly's responsibilities includes the following: 1) Law-making: The government introduces a bill and it is sent to the Wolesi Jirga, except in the case of judicial affairs, which is sent first to the Supreme Court and then to the Wolesi Jirga. The Wolesi Jirga has one month to come up with a decision on the bill and then send it to the Meshrano Jirga. The Meshrano Jirga has fifteen days to decide on it. If they fail to decide, the law is considered passed by the respective house. In order for the bill to become law, it must be approved by both



houses and endorsed by the President of the Republic. 2) Government oversight: The National Assembly monitors the government to make sure that programs and policies are being delivered to the people as promised and the laws are being applied fairly. Any commission from either of the houses of the National Assembly can question government ministers about specific topics. Based on the ministers' responses, the National Assembly may call for "a questioning session" which is a more **extensive** and effective means of ensuring government accountability. 3) Representation: Legislative power is vested in the Afghan National Assembly, which is the highest organ representing the will of the people. The National Assembly ensures that people and their **well-being** are protected.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, it is stated that the National Assembly of Afghanistan is  
(A) Old  
(B) Bicameral  
(C) Made of the Wolesi Jirga and the Meshrano Jirga  
(D) Both (B) and (C) are true
2. In paragraph one, how many members does the Meshrano Jirga have?  
(A) 102  
(B) 200  
(C) 351  
(D) 259
3. In paragraph one, the word **appoint** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Elect  
(B) Select  
(C) Assign  
(D) Vote
4. In paragraph one, what is the minimum required age for a person to be elected in the Wolesi Jirga?  
(A) 18 or above  
(B) 20 or above  
(C) 20 only  
(D) 25 and above
5. In paragraph two, the word **interest** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Money  
(B) Involvement  
(C) Advantage



- (D) Support
6. In paragraph two, it can be inferred that National Assembly represents
    - (A) The legislative power
    - (B) The executive power
    - (C) The judicial power
    - (D) All of the above are true
  7. In paragraph three, what is the requirement for a bill to become a law?
    - (A) It must be passed the House of the People
    - (B) It must be endorsed by the President
    - (C) It must be passed by the House of Elders
    - (D) All of the above are true
  8. In paragraph four, the word **extensive** is closest in meaning to
    - (A) Narrow
    - (B) General
    - (C) Little
    - (D) Specified
  9. In paragraph four, commissions in both houses of the National Assembly may
    - (A) Question a minister
    - (B) Help a minister
    - (C) Appoint a minister
    - (D) Order a minister to do a certain thing
  10. In the last paragraph, the word **wellbeing** is closest in meaning to
    - (A) The state of being free from problems
    - (B) The state of being happy and prosperous
    - (C) The state of having enough of everything
    - (D) Sufficient

## Grammar

### *Phrasal Verbs (Two-Word Verbs)*

| Phrasal Verbs (Two-Word Verbs)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Examples                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>A verb is a word used to show action or state of being.</p> <p>The term "phrasal verb" refers to a verb and a preposition which together have a special meaning. For example, 'put somebody <b>away</b>' means to put someone in prison. Phrasal verbs are also called two-word verbs.</p> <p>The two words in a phrasal verb can either be separated (separable) or kept</p> | <p>He <b>works</b> in the Parliament as a guard. (action)<br/>He <b>is</b> a Member of Parliament. (state)</p> <p><b>Look into</b> = to investigate<br/>The police will <b>look into</b> the case as soon as possible.</p> <p><b>to turn off</b> = to stop a machine, light etc<br/><b>Turn</b> the lights <b>off</b> when you leave the</p> |



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>together (non-separable). With a separable phrasal verb, a noun may come either between the verb and the preposition or after the preposition.</p> <p>A pronoun comes between the verb and the preposition of the phrasal verb.</p> <p>With a non-separable phrasal verb, a noun or pronoun must follow the preposition.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Phrasal verbs are especially common in informal English.</p> | <p>room.</p> <p><b>Turn off</b> the lights when you leave the room.</p> <p>Turn <b>it</b> off. (correct)<br/>Turn off <b>it</b>. (incorrect)</p> <p><b>to get off</b> = to leave a bus, train etc<br/>As soon as the suspect <b>got off</b> the bus, the police arrested him.</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### Grammar Exercise

Circle the correct answer to complete the following sentences.

1. The Minister of Commerce was asked to \_\_\_\_\_ during the questioning session. (a. sit down on the seat, b. sit on the seat down, c. both a and b are possible)
2. The Head of the Wolesi Jirga \_\_\_\_\_. (a. called off the meeting, b. called the meeting off, c. both a and b are possible)
3. A woman MP criticized the police chief for mishandling the situation and \_\_\_\_\_. (a. called for his resignation, b. called his resignation for, c. both a and b are possible)
4. A young MP \_\_\_\_\_. Police do not suspect murder. (a. passed away last week, b. passed last week away, c. both a and b are possible)
5. A man who had killed a member of the Meshrano Jirga in a car accident, \_\_\_\_\_ to the police yesterday afternoon. (a. turned himself in, b. turned in himself, c. both a and b are possible)
6. I \_\_\_\_\_, but I couldn't catch him. (a. ran after the person who stole my money, b. ran the person who stole my money after, c. both a and b are possible)
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ when he was only 12. (a. ran away from home, b. ran from home away, c. both a and b are possible)
8. Legislative power \_\_\_\_\_, which is the highest organ representing and protecting the will of the people. (a. is vested in the Afghan National Assembly, b. is vested the Afghan National Assembly in, c. both a and b are possible)
9. The National Assembly \_\_\_\_\_ to cut the defense budget. (a. voted through a proposal, b. voted a proposal through, c. both a and b are possible)

10. The police got into the house of a candidate for the Provincial Council who was accused of murder by \_\_\_\_\_. (a. breaking down the door, b. breaking the door down, c. both a and b are possible)

## Chapter Five

### The Ministry of Justice

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word                   | Meaning       | #  | Word            | Meaning           |
|---|------------------------|---------------|----|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1 | To be in charge of (v) | مسئول بودن به | 10 | To govern (v)   | حکومت کردن        |
| 2 | Range (n)              | محدوده، حوزه  | 11 | Publication (n) | انتشار، طبع و نشر |
| 3 | The Rule of Law (n)    | حاکمیت قانون  | 12 | Presidency (n)  | ریاست             |
| 4 | To uphold (v)          | تائید کردن    | 13 | Payroll (n)     | لست معاشات        |
| 5 | Link (n)               | ارتباط        | 14 | Procurement (n) | تهیه و تدارکات    |
| 6 | Cabinet (n)            | کابینه        | 15 | State-run (adj) | تحت اداره حکومت   |
| 7 | To strive (v)          | کوشیدن        | 16 | Resolution (n)  | حل                |
| 8 | Credible (adj)         | معتبر، موثق   | 17 | Mediation (n)   | میانجیگری         |
| 9 | Interaction (n)        | گفتگو         | 18 | Affair (n)      | کار، امر          |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. There is a wide **range** of arguments on the issue of refugees. Some people argue that it is still not safe for them to return.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Everyone is subject to the **rule of law** and there is no exception, even for powerful or influential people.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. As a police officer, you are expected to **uphold** the law whether you agree with it or not.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. In her writing she **strived** for a balance between innovation and familiar prose forms.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. They haven't produced any **credible** evidence that could convict him.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The country is now **governed** partly by the elected president and partly by the rebel forces.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The brochure will be ready for **publication** in September.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The **payroll** tax was introduced last year. Now everyone who earns more than 12,500 Afghanis is subject to a 10 percent tax.

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. They have a large budget for the **procurement** of military supplies, even though many poor people may starve to death this year.

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. The UN was trying to reconcile the differences between the fighting parties for over two years, but **mediation** attempts always failed because of new attacks.

- a. to try very hard to do something or to make something happen
- b. the act of talking to different people who have a disagreement in order to find a solution
- c. a series of similar things
- d. to defend or maintain a principle or law
- e. a list of the people employed by a company showing how much money each one is due
- f. a set of laws that people in a society must obey
- g. the obtaining of supplies or goods
- h. issuing printed matter for sale or distribution
- i. to control and direct the public business of a country, city, group of people, etc
- j. able to be believed or trusted



### Listening for comprehension

*Read the following questions. Listen to the lecture about the Ministry of Justice. Take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What does the Ministry of Justice do?
2. What is the responsibility of the Legislative Drafting body?
3. What does the General Legal Department do?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. What is the responsibility of the Department of Publications?
  - (A) Publishes the Official Gazette of the Ministry of Justice
  - (B) Publishes the letters of the Minister of Justice
  - (C) Publishes the *Adalat* Magazine
  - (D) Both (A) and (C) are true



2. Which of the following is true about the responsibility of the Department of the Government Cases?
  - (A) It is responsible for the lawsuits an individual may have against another individual
  - (B) It is responsible for those cases brought against the government by the public
  - (C) It is responsible for those cases brought against the public by the government
  - (D) Both (B) and (C) are true
3. What is the responsibility of the Department of Prisons?
  - (A) It is to collaborate with Ministry of the Interior to manage the prisons
  - (B) It is to manage the prisons
  - (C) It is to build more prisons
  - (D) None of the above is true
4. What is the main responsibility of the General Legal Department?
  - (A) To take people to courts
  - (B) To file charges against wrongdoers
  - (C) To mediate between people as a form of dispute resolution
  - (D) To care for the needy



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

The Ministry of Justice of the Islamic Republic of Afghanistan is in charge of a wide range of the country's legal **affairs**, working closely with other government ministries, institutions, and agencies to ensure that the rule of law in Afghanistan is upheld. It serves as the central link between the individual cabinet ministries, the president's office, and Council of Ministers regarding many legal-related issues. The Ministry strives to achieve justice for all in the country by building fairer, more credible, and more effective justice and legal systems in which social, economic, and political affairs and people's interactions are governed by the rule of law. **It** helps **shape** the justice and legal environments in Afghanistan by providing strategic advice to the government on reforms and policies needed to strengthen the rule of law.

The Ministry of Justice (MOJ) is currently composed of the Office of the Minister, the Office of the Deputy Minister, and the following nine departments known in the MOJ as "presidencies":

- Department of Legislative Drafting: This department, known as the "Taqnin," is responsible for drafting and reviewing all new legislation.



- Department of Publications: This department enters hard copies of draft laws into the MOJ computers and publishes the MOJ's **Official Gazette** and *Adalat* magazine.
- Department of Administration: This department is responsible for the operational functioning of the MOJ, such as payroll, procurement, space management, supplies, etc.
- Department of Government Cases: This department is responsible for those cases brought against the government by the public.
- Department of Social Organizations and Political Parties: This department is responsible for the monitoring and registration of political parties and social organizations, but not for the monitoring and registration of most nongovernmental organizations, which are registered with the Ministry of the Economy.
- Department of Prisons: This is by far the largest department in the MOJ with responsibility for prison management. It was transferred to the MOJ from the Ministry of Interior in 2003.
- Department of Juvenile Justice: This is a **relatively** new department, created specifically to focus on juvenile justice matters.
- General Legal Department: This department, known as the "Hoquq," is regarded as the MOJ's face to the public. It has offices in every province where the public can go for state-run dispute resolution. It functions like an out-of-court mediation system. If the General Legal Department cannot resolve the matter, it is often referred to the courts.
- Kabul Province Legal Department: This is the General Legal Department for Kabul Province which, because of its population size, has its own separate department in the MOJ serving the same functions as the General Legal Department for the rest of the country.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

Read the following questions and circle the best answer.

1. What is the main duty of the Ministry of Justice as stated in paragraph one?
  - (A) Publishing the laws
  - (B) Solving the problems of other ministries
  - (C) Ensuring the rule of law in Afghanistan
  - (D) Cooperation with the government in writing the laws
2. In paragraph one, the word **affair** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Objective
  - (B) Event
  - (C) Matter
  - (D) Job



3. In paragraph one, what is implied in the sentence "It serves as the central link"?  
(A) It is not very important in connecting several government bodies  
(B) It is the main linking ministry which connects several executive bodies  
(C) It does a good job  
(D) It doesn't do a good job
4. In paragraph one, the word **shape** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Deciding the form of something  
(B) Changing the situation  
(C) Making something different  
(D) Making an object from a physical substance
5. In paragraph one, what does the word **it** refer to  
(A) The government  
(B) The Ministry of Justice  
(C) The Office of the President  
(D) The cabinet
6. In paragraph two, drafting and reviewing of all new legislation is the responsibility of  
(A) The Taqin  
(B) The Department of Publications  
(C) The Department of Legislative Drafting  
(D) Both (A) and (C)
7. In paragraph two, the word **gazette** is closest in meaning to  
(A) A newspaper  
(B) A book  
(C) A biweekly newspaper about the policies of the government  
(D) An official publication
8. In paragraph two, the Department of Administration is responsible for  
(A) Procurement and supplies  
(B) Dissemination of Adalat magazine  
(C) Juvenile justice matters  
(D) both (A) and (B)
9. In paragraph two, it can be inferred that the focus of the Department of Juvenile Justice is on  
(A) Young people  
(B) Adults  
(C) Old women  
(D) Old men
10. In paragraph two, the word **relatively** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Extremely  
(B) Too  
(C) Comparatively  
(D) Completely

## Grammar

### Negatives (Using "Not" and Other Negative Words)

| Negatives (Using "Not" and Other Negative Words)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Examples:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <p><b>Not</b> expresses a negative idea.</p> <p><b>Not</b> immediately follows an auxiliary verb or "be." If there is more than one auxiliary verb, <b>not</b> comes immediately after the first auxiliary.</p> <p>In addition to <b>not</b>, the following are negative adverbs:<br/>never, rarely, seldom, hardly (ever), scarcely, barely</p> <p><b>No</b> also expresses a negative idea. <b>Not</b> is used to make a verb negative, but <b>no</b> is used as an adjective in front of a noun.</p> <p>Using a "double negative," or two negatives in one sentence, should be avoided. Double negatives are grammatically incorrect.</p> | <p>Affirmative: The Minister is happy.<br/>Negative: The Minister is <b>not</b> happy.</p> <p>AUX + NOT + MAIN VERB<br/>The Minister will <b>not</b> sign the letter.<br/>The Minister has <b>not</b> signed the letter.<br/>The Minister is <b>not</b> at the meeting.<br/>The Minister was <b>not</b> there.<br/>The Minister does <b>not</b> want to sign the letter.<br/>The Minister did <b>not</b> sign the letter.</p> <p>The Minister has <b>never</b> written a letter to you.</p> <p>I do <b>not</b> have enough money.<br/>I have <b>no</b> money.</p> <p>I <b>don't</b> have <b>no</b> money. (incorrect)<br/>It should be as follows:<br/>I don't have any money.<br/>I have no money.</p> |                        |
| <b>Contraction of auxiliary verbs with not:</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                        |
| are not = aren't                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | do not = don't                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | must not = mustn't     |
| cannot = can't                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | has not = hasn't                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | should not = shouldn't |
| could not = couldn't                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | have not = haven't                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | was not = wasn't       |
| did not = didn't                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | had not = hadn't                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | will not = won't       |
| does not = doesn't                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | is not = isn't                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | would not = wouldn't   |

## Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct words to complete the following sentences.

- The Department of Legislative Drafting \_\_\_\_\_ responsible for printing all new legislation. (is not, is no)
- The Department of Juvenile Justice \_\_\_\_\_ focus on gender. (does not, is not)



3. He \_\_\_\_\_ been appointed as the Minister of Justice. (never has, has never)
4. The issues are of \_\_\_\_\_ great importance to the Ministry of Justice. (not, no)
5. The suspect paid \_\_\_\_\_ attention to the police warning and tried to escape. (no, not)
6. The man who was convicted of robbery said, "\_\_\_\_\_ I rob again." (never will, will never)
7. The police \_\_\_\_\_ charge him with robbery. He was only a suspect. (never, did not)
8. The Department of Prison of the Ministry of Justice \_\_\_\_\_ confirmed the report yet. (has no, has not)
9. The robber said, "I had \_\_\_\_\_ money, so I robbed the bank." (not, no)
10. The Department of Administration does \_\_\_\_\_ publish the Official Gazette. (no, not)

## Chapter Six

### The Executive Branch

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word                 | Meaning          | #  | Word                   | Meaning                    |
|---|----------------------|------------------|----|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 | Executive branch (n) | قوه اجرائیه      | 10 | To expire (v)          | بپایان رسیدن               |
| 2 | To consist of (v)    | شامل بودن        | 11 | Election (n)           | انتخابات                   |
| 3 | Popularly (adv)      | بطور مشهور       | 12 | Candidate (n)          | کاندید، نامزد              |
| 4 | To elect (v)         | انتخاب کردن      | 13 | To succeed (v)         | موفق شدن،                  |
| 5 | Vice president (n)   | معاون رئیس جمهور | 14 | Run-off (n)            | انتخابات برای بار دوم      |
| 6 | Chairman (n)         | رئیس             | 15 | Citizen (n)            | شهروند، تبعه               |
| 7 | Transitional (adj)   | انتقالی، عبوری   | 16 | War crimes (n)         | جنایات جنگی                |
| 8 | Interim (adj)        | موقت             | 17 | Commander-in-chief (n) | فرمانده عمومی نیروهای مسلح |
| 9 | To vote (v)          | رای دادن         | 18 | Attorney general (n)   | دادستان کل (لوی سارنوال)   |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The team of researchers **consisted of** two Afghans and four Americans.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The group **elected** one of its members as their spokesperson.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. An **interim** government was set up for the period before the country's first free election.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. She was too young to **vote** in the national election. The minimum age to vote is 18 in Afghanistan.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The contract between the two companies will **expire** at the end of the year. If either party wants to renew the contract, they should plan in advance.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. There are three **candidates** running in the election.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. She's been trying to pass her driving test for six years and she finally **succeeded**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Ahmad won in the **runoff** for the presidential elections.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The interests of Afghan **citizens** living abroad are protected by the Afghan Embassy.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Genocide, or the murder of a whole group of people, is a **war crime**.
- a. a person who is a member of a particular country and who has rights because of being born there or because of being given rights
  - b. coming to an end or no longer in use or effect
  - c. temporary and intended for use only until something more permanent is created
  - d. to be made of or formed from something
  - e. to choose by voting
  - f. a person who is competing to get a job or elected position
  - g. an extra competition or election to decide the winner, because the leading competitors have finished with equal votes
  - h. a wrongdoing committed during wartime that breaks the internationally accepted rules of war
  - i. to express your opinion or choice by marking a paper or raising your hand
  - j. to achieve something planned or desired



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of the executive branch and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What does Afghanistan's executive branch consist of?
2. What are the criteria to become president of Afghanistan, according to the constitution?
3. What are some of the responsibilities of the president of Afghanistan?





### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. When did Karzai become the first elected president of Afghanistan?  
(A) December 5, 2001  
(B) December 6, 2002  
(C) December 7, 2004  
(D) December 8, 2006
2. How many times can a president be elected in Afghanistan?  
(A) Once  
(B) Twice  
(C) Three times  
(D) Four times
3. What will happen if no presidential candidate receives more than 50 percent of the votes in the first round?  
(A) There will be a new election for all the candidates  
(B) The candidate with the highest votes will be the president of Afghanistan  
(C) One of the top four candidates will be chosen by the parliament to become president of Afghanistan  
(D) A runoff election will be held within two weeks and the top two candidates will participate
4. Which of the following is not true about the duties and responsibilities of the president?  
(A) The president appoints cabinet ministers  
(B) The president appoints the first and second vice presidents  
(C) The president appoints the head of Bank Millie  
(D) The president appoints the Attorney General



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

The Executive Branch of the Afghan government consists of a powerful and popularly elected president and two vice presidents. President Hamid Karzai became the first



democratically elected President of Afghanistan on December 7, 2004. **Previously**, Hamid Karzai was Chairman of the Transitional Administration and Interim President from 2002 until the 2004 election.

The constitution of Afghanistan provides for a strong presidential system. The president is elected directly by the Afghan people in free, general, secret, and direct elections. The president is elected after receiving more than 50 percent of the votes cast and serves a five-year term. The president can serve only two terms.

The presidential term expires on the first of June (Jawza) of the fifth year in office. Elections for a new president are held within 30 to 60 days before the end of the presidential term. If none of the candidates succeeds in receiving more than 50 percent of the vote in the first **round** of voting, a runoff election is held within two weeks. In this round, only the two candidates with the highest number of votes will participate. In the run-off, the candidate who gets the majority of the votes shall be elected as the president.

The elected president must be Muslim, an Afghan citizen born of Afghan parents, and should not be guilty of war crimes. The president is the commander-in-chief of **the armed forces**. Under the new constitution, the ministers are appointed by the president and approved by the National Assembly. Presidential responsibilities include: **determining** policies with the approval of the National Assembly; appointing the nation's ministers, the attorney general, the director of the Central Bank, and the justices of the Supreme Court with the approval of the main legislative body, the Wolesi Jirga; and appointing the nation's first and second vice presidents.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, the word **previously** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Formerly  
(B) In the future  
(C) Commonly  
(D) Generally
2. In paragraph one, which of the following is true about the **executive power**  
(A) A president and one vice president  
(B) A president and two vice presidents  
(C) A president and a prime minister  
(D) A president
3. In paragraph two, the system of government according to the constitution is  
(A) Presidential system



- (B) Monarchy
  - (C) Constitutional monarchy
  - (D) None of the above
4. In paragraph two, the president is directly elected by the people to
- (A) A four-year term
  - (B) A five-year term
  - (C) A six-year term
  - (D) An eight-year term
5. In paragraph two, the president is chosen in a secret, direct, free and general voting by receiving
- (A) 30 percent of the votes
  - (B) The maximum of the votes
  - (C) More than 50 percent of the votes
  - (D) 50 percent of the votes
6. In paragraph three, the word **round** is closest in meaning to
- (A) Circular
  - (B) Around
  - (C) A complete unit or part in series of events
  - (D) Complete
7. As stated in paragraph three, who will be elected as the president in the runoff?
- (A) The candidate who receives more than 50 percent of the votes
  - (B) The candidate who receives more than 70 percent of the votes
  - (C) The candidate who receives more than 40 percent of the votes
  - (D) The candidate who receives the majority of the votes
8. In paragraph four, the phrase **the armed forces** is closest in meaning to
- (A) The army
  - (B) The military forces of a country
  - (C) The air force of a country
  - (D) The soldiers guarding the president
9. In paragraph four, the word **determining** is closest in meaning to
- (A) Specifying
  - (B) Appointing
  - (C) Collecting
  - (D) Deciding
10. Based on paragraph four, who will appoint the vice presidents?
- (A) The National Assembly
  - (B) The Supreme Court
  - (C) The House of Elders
  - (D) The president

## Grammar

### Future Simple and Future Continuous

| Future Simple and Future Continuous                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Examples:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>The simple future</b> tense expresses an action that will happen at a specific time in the future.</p> <p>We use "<b>will</b>" and "<b>be going to + verb</b>" to talk about the future. "Will" is used when we talk about something that we want to do in the future at the time of speaking. The short form of 'will not' is (won't). However, "be going to" is used when we have prior plans.</p> <p><b>Short Forms:</b></p> <p><b>The Future Continuous</b> tense expresses an ongoing activity that will be in progress at a time in the future.</p> | <p>The president <b>will ratify</b> the new law tomorrow.</p> <p>The Attorney General <b>will attend</b> the meeting.</p> <p>The president <b>is going to ratify</b> the new law.</p> <p>I'll, we'll, you'll, they'll, he'll, she'll, it'll</p> <p>At this time tomorrow, the president <b>will be attending</b> the meeting.</p> <p>The minister <b>is going to be attending</b> the meeting at this time tomorrow afternoon.</p> |

## Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct word or phrase to complete the following sentences.

1. The president \_\_\_\_\_ attend the cabinet meeting tomorrow. (will be, is going to)
2. The Minister of Commerce \_\_\_\_\_ resign next week. (is going to, will be)
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ vote in the next presidential election. (am going to, be going to,)
4. When we arrive at the meeting, the chairman \_\_\_\_\_ the conference. (will open, will be opening)
5. The president \_\_\_\_\_ the Director of the Central Bank as soon as next month. (will appointing, will appoint)
6. At this time tomorrow, the Minister of Justice \_\_\_\_\_ in the conference. (will be talking, is going to talk)
7. The head of the Civil Law Department will present his plans to the board. He \_\_\_\_\_ changes to the department. (will make, is going to making)

8. The first vice president is scheduled to talk at the seminar. He \_\_\_\_\_ about the achievement of the government in improving the security. (is going to talk, will talk)
9. According to the recent poll conducted by a newspaper, 80 percent of the people registered \_\_\_\_\_ in the coming elections. (will be voting, are going to vote)
10. The presidential candidate is scheduled to talk to university students tomorrow at 2 pm in the library. He \_\_\_\_\_ about his strategy and future plans. (will talk, will be talking)



## Chapter Seven

### The Taqin

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word            | Meaning     | #  | Word              | Meaning           |
|---|-----------------|-------------|----|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1 | Passage (n)     | تصویب       | 10 | Consistency (n)   | سازگاری، توافق    |
| 2 | Task (n)        | کار، وظیفه  | 11 | Successive (adj)  | متوالی، پی در پی  |
| 3 | In charge       | عهده دار    | 12 | To amend (v)      | اصلاح کردن        |
| 4 | Draft (n)       | مسوده       | 13 | Function (n)      | کار، عمل          |
| 5 | Compliance (n)  | مطابقت      | 14 | To brief (v)      | آگهی دادن         |
| 6 | To ensure (v)   | تضمین کردن  | 15 | To categorize (v) | دسته بندی کردن    |
| 7 | Crucial (adj)   | مهم         | 16 | Labor (n)         | کار               |
| 8 | To issue (v)    | انتشار دادن | 17 | Resource (n)      | منبع              |
| 9 | Principal (adj) | اصلی، مهم   | 18 | Legislation (n)   | قانون، وضع قانونی |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. A group of MP's again urged **passage** of a constitutional amendment decriminalizing abortion.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Who will be **in charge** of the department when Ahmad leaves?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The company said that it had always acted in **compliance** with environmental laws.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The role of the police is **to ensure** that the law is obeyed.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Her work has been **crucial** to the project's success. She has played a vital role in the decision-making, implementation, and finalization of the project.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. He won the World Championship for the third **successive** year.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Until the constitution is **amended**, the power to appoint ministers will remain with the president.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. We have already been **briefed** about how the mission should be accomplished.

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. The books are **categorized** from the beginner level to the advanced level.

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. The car parts are not expensive; it's the **labor** that is expensive.

- a. to make something certain to happen
- b. when people obey an order, rule or request
- c. work that usually involves physical effort
- d. to change the words of a text, typically a law or a legal document
- e. the official approval of something, like a new law
- f. extremely important or necessary
- g. to give someone instructions or information about what they should do or say
- h. a number of similar events or people that happen one after the other
- i. responsible for someone or something
- j. to put people or things into groups with the same features



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of the Taqin and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What does the Taqin do?
2. Why was the Taqin established?
3. Who are the main clients of the Taqin?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. When was the Taqin established?
  - (A) 2001
  - (B) 1919
  - (C) 1960
  - (D) 1962
2. Which of the following is not true about the Taqin's responsibilities?
  - (A) Ensuring the compliance of a law with the constitution
  - (B) Ensuring the compliance of a law with Islamic law
  - (C) Ensuring the consistency among Afghan laws



- (D) Ensuring the compliance of a law with the constitution of other countries
3. What are the two bodies of the Ministry of Justice?
- (A) The Wolesi Jirga and Meshrano Jirga
  - (B) The office of the Minister of Justice and the Secretariat
  - (C) The Academic Council and the Legislative Committee
  - (D) The Academic Council and the Executive Committee
4. Which of the following is not a department of the Taqin?
- (A) Department of Commercial and Private Sector Laws
  - (B) Department of Agricultural Laws
  - (C) Department of Civil Laws
  - (D) Department of Penal Laws



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

The Ministry of Justice has traditionally played a central role in the passage of laws in Afghanistan. The department within the Ministry of Justice in charge of reviewing draft laws is known as the “Taqnin”. The Taqnin was established by law in 1962 to assist the **then** Office of the Prime Minister in drafting and reviewing all national legislation, primarily to ensure new laws were in compliance with the constitution, Islamic law, international legal standards, and to check that new laws do not conflict with other existing laws. This is an extremely difficult task, given that thousands of legislative documents exist in Afghanistan, many of which were issued by successive governments over the last 30 years and are related to the same or similar topics.

The Taqnin continues to play a principal role in the legislative drafting process of Afghanistan. The Taqnin’s main clients are other government ministries and independent agencies of the state, such as the Central Bank. All of them **rely on** the services of the Taqnin when they want legislation passed or amended. Also, the Taqnin serves as a resource for those in the government **who** want to know if there is an existing law on a particular topic.

Leading **professional** members of the Taqnin also sit on two bodies within the Ministry of Justice, one of which is known as an “Academic Council.” Its functions include approving the ranks of newly admitted professional members in the Ministry of Justice, as well as approving proposed annual legislative work plans. The other body is known as the “Executive Committee,” which briefs the Minister of Justice on the contents of drafts laws that he is supposed to present to the Council of Ministers.



Along with the offices of the Taqin Chairman and the Deputy Chairman, the Taqin has seven professional departments that work on drafting and reviewing **legislation**. These seven departments are categorized by different areas of law, as follows:

- Department of Labor and Administration
- Department of Civil Laws
- Department of Penal Laws
- Department of International Law and Human Rights
- Department of Commercial and Private Sector Law
- Department of Economy and Finance
- Department of Education, Culture and Health



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, the Ministry of Justice  
(A) Has a central role in the passage of laws  
(B) Does not play an important role  
(C) Has a traditional role  
(D) All of the above are true
2. In paragraph one, it is stated that the Taqin is responsible for  
(A) Publishing laws  
(B) Reviewing draft laws  
(C) Ratifying new laws  
(D) none of the above are true
3. In paragraph one, the word **then** is closest in meaning to  
(A) After that  
(B) Now  
(C) At that time in the future  
(D) At that time in the past
4. What has the main contribution of the Taqin been since its establishment?  
(A) Passage of laws  
(B) Publishing the laws  
(C) Compliance with the constitution  
(D) Legislative drafting and reviewing of the laws
5. In paragraph two, it can be inferred that the Taqin's main client does not include  
(A) The Ministry of Commerce  
(B) The Civil Society



- (C) Non-governmental organization  
(D) Both B and C
6. In paragraph two, the phrase **rely on** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Considering somebody/something important  
(B) Thinking somebody/something is useful for a task  
(C) Being independent  
(D) Depending on the help of somebody/something in order to continue or to succeed
7. In paragraph two, it is implied that the main client of the Taqin is  
(A) The Central Bank  
(B) The Ministry of the Interior  
(C) The Ministry of Foreign Affairs  
(D) All of the above are true
8. In paragraph two, what does the word **who** refer to?  
(A) Independent agencies  
(B) Government ministries  
(C) Law  
(D) Those in the government
9. In paragraph three, the word **professional** is closest in meaning to  
(A) A busy person  
(B) Expert  
(C) Old  
(D) Young
10. In paragraph four, the word **legislation** is closest in meaning to  
(A) A decree issued by the president  
(B) Bill of rights  
(C) An order  
(D) A law introduced by a government and passed by a parliament

## Grammar

### Noun Clauses

| Noun Clauses                                                         | Examples:                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A <b>noun</b> is a person, place or thing.                           | Kabul, Ahmad, handcuffs, prison, Ministry of Justice, the Supreme Court |
| <b>Kinds of Nouns:</b>                                               |                                                                         |
| A <b>Common Noun</b> is a name given to an object or a person.       | handcuffs, prison, court, boy, girl                                     |
| A <b>Proper Noun</b> is the name of some particular person or place. | Kabul, the Supreme Court, Chief Justice                                 |
| A <b>Collective Noun</b> is the name of a                            | an army, a crowd, jury                                                  |

|                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| group or people or things.                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                     |
| An <b>Abstract Noun</b> is usually the name of a quality, action, or state of being.                                 | obedience, honesty, dishonesty, kindness                                                                                            |
| Nouns have a <b>gender, number, and case</b> .                                                                       |                                                                                                                                     |
| Gender means a noun is either <b>masculine</b> (male), <b>feminine</b> (female), or <b>neutral</b> (with no gender). | father (masculine)<br>mother (feminine)<br>child (neutral)                                                                          |
| <b>Number</b> shows whether a noun is <b>singular</b> or <b>plural</b> .                                             | prison (singular)<br>prisons (plural)<br>class (singular)<br>classes (plural)                                                       |
| <b>Case</b> shows whether a noun is used as <b>subject</b> or <b>object</b> of a verb.                               | <u>Ahmad</u> murdered <u>his friend</u> .<br>(Ahmad = subject, doer of an action.)<br>(his friend = object, receiver of an action.) |
| Case also shows the possessive case.                                                                                 | Ahmad's car (shows possession)                                                                                                      |

### Grammar Exercise

*In the following sentences, circle the answer that is true for the underlined words.*

1. The Taqin has played a principal role in the legislative drafting process of Afghanistan since its establishment. (common noun, proper noun, abstract noun)
2. The **police** are investigating fraud allegations against a member of the Ministry of Justice's Legislative Department. ( common noun, abstract noun, collective noun)
3. My brother is a professional member of the Research Department. (masculine, feminine, neutral)
4. The Taqin's main clients are other government ministries and independent agencies of the state such as the Central Bank. (common noun, plural noun, possessive case)
5. Ahmad works in the Ministry of Justice. (subject of a verb, object of a verb, possessive case)
6. The Ministry of Justice's Taqin Department plays a crucial **role** in the drafting and reviewing of legislative documents in Afghanistan. ( common noun, abstract noun, collective noun)
7. The cause of Deputy Minister's **death** has been confirmed as a heart attack. (common noun, abstract noun, collective noun)

8. The Minister's senior **advisor** has been accused of embezzlement. (masculine, feminine, neutral)
9. Mr. **Halim** is the head of the Legislative Department of Ministry of Justice which is known as the Taqin. ( common noun, abstract noun, proper noun)
10. All draft laws in Afghanistan must be examined by professional **members** of the Taqin. (common noun, abstract noun, collective noun)

## Chapter Eight

### The Judiciary

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word                           | Meaning                       | #  | Word              | Meaning         |
|---|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|----|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1 | To empower (v)                 | توانمند ساختن                 | 10 | Procedure (n)     | طرز العمل، روش  |
| 2 | Recommendation (n)             | سفارش، توصیه                  | 11 | To deem (v)       | فرض کردن        |
| 3 | To take into consideration (v) | ملاحظه نمودن                  | 12 | Entity (n)        | نهاد            |
| 4 | Stage (n)                      | مرحله                         | 13 | Dispute (n)       | مشاجره، نزاع    |
| 5 | Application (n)                | کاربرد، استفاده               | 14 | Standing (adj)    | ثابت، نافذ      |
| 6 | To breach (v)                  | نقض کردن                      | 15 | Citizen (n)       | شهروند، تبعه    |
| 7 | To handle (v)                  | سرکار داشتن با                | 16 | Pet (n)           | حیوان اهلی منزل |
| 8 | Subject to something (v)       | در معرض گذاشتن، موکول بودن به | 17 | Snake (n)         | مار             |
| 9 | Provision (n)                  | حکم، احکام                    | 18 | Jurisprudence (n) | فقه، حقوق الهی  |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The first step in **empowering** women is educating them so they can get jobs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. I bought this computer based on Ahmad's **recommendation**, but it is not good. They must have sold me a bad one.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The **application** of this new cure to treat cancer is in question because it is based more on theory than experiment.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The employees **breached** their agreement with their employer. Thus, their employer was angry and filed a lawsuit against them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. If you can't **handle** the job, I'll get someone else to do it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The World Food Program said that they will provide help whenever Afghanistan **deems** it appropriate.



- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. She accepted the job with the **provision** that she would be paid extra to cover her relocation expenses.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The museums work closely together, but are separate legal **entities**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The interests of Afghan **citizens** living abroad are protected by the Afghan Embassy.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Matters of law with no provision in the constitution or other standing laws shall be judged within the limits of the constitution in accord with the Hanafi **jurisprudence**.
- a. a way in which something can be used for a particular purpose
  - b. the study of law and the principles on which law is based
  - c. to deal with, have responsibility for, or be in charge of
  - d. to give someone official authority or the freedom to do something
  - e. something which exists apart from other things, having its own independent existence
  - f. an act of breaking a law, promise, agreement, or relationship
  - g. a suggestion that something is good or suitable for a particular purpose or job
  - h. to consider or judge something in a particular way
  - i. a person who is a member of a particular country
  - j. a statement that a certain action must take place before an official agreement can be made.



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of the judiciary and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. How are the traveling courts established?
2. What will happen if there is no clear legal provision for a case?
3. In what cases can the Shia sect of law be used?





### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. Which of the following is not part of the judiciary power of Afghanistan?  
(A) The Appeals Court  
(B) The National Assembly  
(C) The Supreme Court  
(D) The Primary Court
2. Which of the following is not true about the Supreme Court?  
(A) The Supreme Court deals with the referred cases of Courts of Appeals only in terms of accurate application of the law  
(B) The judicial power of Afghanistan is vested in the Supreme Court of Afghanistan  
(C) The Supreme Court is the highest judicial body in Afghanistan  
(D) The Supreme Court is not independent
3. How are trials conducted in Afghanistan?  
(A) Trials are always closed; no one is allowed to observe  
(B) Trials are always open; people can observe freely  
(C) Trials are open subject to the law  
(D) Trials are never closed
4. What will happen with matters of law when there is no provision in the constitution and other standing laws?  
(A) The judge will use his own knowledge and judgment  
(B) The Supreme Court will pass a new law in such a case  
(C) The president will be consulted and the decision will be made accordingly  
(D) The Hanafi jurisprudence will be used in the judgment



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

The Judiciary in Afghanistan is independent and is composed of the Supreme Court, Courts of Appeals and Primary Courts. Travelling courts are established when



needed, on recommendation by the Supreme Court and with the approval of the President.

The judiciary is empowered to resolve disputes between **individuals**, legal entities, and the state, in accordance with law. Cases are ultimately resolved in the Supreme Court, which takes into account the quality and nature of the cases in the Primary Courts and the Appeals Courts. The Supreme Court deals with the cases referred by the courts to ensure the **accurate** application of law, checking that no laws were breached or applied wrongly.

The courts resolve cases in accordance with the constitution and other laws of the Islamic Republic of Afghanistan. Trials in Afghan courts are open and anybody may attend, subject to law. The court may **convene** a **closed trial** only if the law requires it. Final decisions are always open to the public.

If there is no clear legal provision for the case, the case is handled in accordance with articles 130 and 131 of the constitution that state matters of law with no provision shall be judged with Hanafi jurisprudence, within the limits of the constitution. For example, Ahmad killed a pet snake that belonged to Walid. Walid bought the snake for 20,000 Afghanis. He filed a case against Ahmad. Since there is no law about killing a pet snake, the case is judged by Hanafi jurisprudence. For Shia citizens, the judiciary applies the Shia school of law where **applicable**. The Afghan constitution allows for judges to be trained in either civil or Islamic law.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, the judicial power of Afghanistan is composed of  
(A) The Appeals Court  
(B) The Primary Court  
(C) The Supreme Court  
(D) All of the above are true
2. In paragraph one, it is stated that the judicial power  
(A) Acts per instruction of the executive power  
(B) Is independent  
(C) Is dependent on the legislative power  
(D) None of the above are true
3. In paragraph two, the word **individual** is closest in meaning to  
(A) People who are different from other people  
(B) People who have common interests  
(C) A single person or thing



- (D) A company or an organization
4. In paragraph two, the judiciary resolves disputes between  
(A) Individuals and legal entities excluding the state  
(B) Individuals and legal entities including the state  
(C) Only individuals  
(D) Only legal entities
5. In paragraph two, the word **accurate** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Without a lot of mistakes  
(B) Correct and without any mistakes  
(C) Full of mistakes  
(D) Complete
6. In paragraph three, the phrase **closed trial** refers to a trial that  
(A) Everyone may attend  
(B) Everyone may not attend  
(C) Everyone may attend, subject to law  
(D) All of the above are true
7. In paragraph three, the word **convene** is closest in meaning to  
(A) To disband  
(B) To arrange for a meeting  
(C) To make a group  
(D) To perform
8. In paragraph three, it is implied that the notice of final decision of a trial will be  
(A) Used for research purposes only  
(B) Available for the people  
(C) Kept as a secret  
(D) Archived
9. In paragraph four, the word **applicable** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Useful  
(B) Necessary  
(C) Possible  
(D) Affecting or relating to a person
10. In paragraph four, it is stated that the judges may be trained  
(A) Both in civil law and Islamic law  
(B) Either in civil law or Islamic law  
(C) Neither civil law nor Islamic law  
(D) Only in Islamic law

## Grammar

### Adverbs

| Adverbs                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Examples:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>Adverbs</b> modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.</p> <p>When adverbs modify verbs, they often answer the question "How?" Also, they are often formed by adding <b>-ly</b> to an adjective.</p> <p>Adverbs are also used to express time, frequency, place, manner, degree or quantity, reason, etc.</p> <p>Adverbs can be used in the beginning, middle and end of a sentence. However, there are certain adverbs that can only be used in certain positions.</p> | <p>He <b>works hard</b>. (modifying verb)<br/> He is <b>extremely happy</b>. (modifying adjective)<br/> He works <b>extremely hard</b>. (modifying other adverb)</p> <p>He walked quickly.<br/> How did he walk? He walked quickly.<br/> quick (adjective)<br/> <b>quickly</b> (adverb)</p> <p>The judge <b>always</b> comes on time.<br/> (always = adverb of frequency)<br/> The Chief Justice will come here <b>tomorrow</b>. (tomorrow = adverb of time)<br/> That suspect is <b>there</b> in that cell. (there = adverb of place)<br/> The witness opened the door <b>quietly</b>.<br/> (quietly = adverb of manner)</p> <p><b>Sometimes</b> the judge complains about the crime rate. (beginning)<br/> The judge complains about the crime rate <b>sometimes</b>. (end)<br/> She has <b>never</b> committed a crime. (middle)<br/> Tomorrow he will be tried. (beginning)<br/> He will be tried <b>tomorrow</b>. (end)</p> |

### Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the best word to complete the following sentences.

- Ahmad is a good police officer. He works \_\_\_\_\_. (hard, hardly)
- The Chief Justice \_\_\_\_\_ on time. (always is, is always)
- The man accused of shoplifting \_\_\_\_\_ been in this store. (has never, never has)
- The judge speaks English very \_\_\_\_\_. (good, well)
- The witness seemed \_\_\_\_\_. (happy very, very happy)
- The defendant \_\_\_\_\_ to committing the crime. (never admitted, admitted never)

7. The police handled the situation \_\_\_\_\_. (careless, carelessly)
8. The defendant \_\_\_\_\_ be acquitted soon. (will probably, probably will)
9. The judge \_\_\_\_\_ a black robe in the court. (always wears, wears always)
10. The Supreme Court will announce its decision \_\_\_\_\_. (public, publicly)

## Unit Three:

### The Court System of Afghanistan

## Chapter Nine

### Primary Courts

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word                         | Meaning                | #  | Word                | Meaning      |
|---|------------------------------|------------------------|----|---------------------|--------------|
| 1 | District (n)                 | ناحیه، ولسوالی         | 9  | Civil (adj)         | ملکی         |
| 2 | To involve (v)               | درگیر شدن، گرفتار کردن | 10 | Individual (n)      | فردی         |
| 3 | Provincial Primary Court (n) | محکمه ابتدایی ولایتی   | 11 | In accordance with  | مطابق به     |
| 4 | Commercial Primary Court (n) | محکمه ابتدایی تجارتي   | 12 | Public Security (n) | امنیت عامه   |
| 5 | District Primary Court (n)   | محکمه ابتدایی ولسوالی  | 13 | Criminal (n)        | جنایی/جزائی  |
| 6 | Jurisdiction (n)             | حوزه قضایی             | 14 | Article (n)         | ماده         |
| 7 | Issue (n)                    | موضوع، مسئله           | 15 | Natural (adj)       | طبیعی، حقیقی |
| 8 | To comprise (v)              | شامل بودن              |    | To adopt (v)        | اتخاذ کردن   |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The victim lived in the 5<sup>th</sup> **district** of Kabul.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The Commercial Primary Court has no **jurisdiction** over cases of this kind. We need to take the case to the Provincial Primary Court.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Don't worry about who will do it – that is not an important **issue**. The manager will eventually assign someone to do it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The course materials **comprise** a class book, a practice book, and an audio tape.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The matter would be better dealt with in the **civil** court than in an expensive criminal proceeding.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Every **individual** has rights that must never be taken away.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. She has been **involved** with animal rights for many years.



- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The police conducted a **criminal** investigation of the suicide to make sure it wasn't a murder.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Under **article** 18 of the constitution, Friday is a public holiday in Afghanistan.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. People say that breast-feeding is better than bottle-feeding because it is more **natural**.
- a. A clause or item in a contract, treaty, or other formal agreement
  - b. a single person
  - c. an area of a country or town which has fixed borders that are used for official purposes
  - d. relating to crime
  - e. to consist of, or be composed of different parts
  - f. as found in nature
  - g. relating to private arguments between people or organizations rather than criminal matters
  - h. the authority of an official organization to make and deal with legal decisions
  - i. to include; to take part in something
  - j. a subject or problem which people are thinking and talking about



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of the primary courts and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What are the Primary Courts that reside within each Court of Appeal's jurisdiction?
2. What are the Dewans of the Central Primary Courts?
3. What does the Family Issues Primary Court do?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. Which article of the law specifies the Primary Courts located within the jurisdiction of each Appeals Court?



- (A) Article 10
  - (B) Article 20
  - (C) Article 30
  - (D) Article 40
2. Which of the following is not in a Appeals Court' jurisdiction?
- (A) Land Dispute Primary Court
  - (B) Juvenile Court
  - (C) Family Issues Primary Court
  - (D) District Primary Court
3. How many heads and members does the Dewan of the Central Primary Court have?
- (A) Four heads and more than four members
  - (B) One head and more than four members
  - (C) One head and more than ten members
  - (D) One head and no more than four members
4. Which of the following is not a Dewan of the Central Primary Court?
- (A) Public Security Dewan
  - (B) Traffic Criminal Dewan
  - (C) Juvenile Offenses Dewan
  - (D) Civil Dewan



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

According to article 40 of the Law on Organization and Jurisdiction of Courts, each Appeals Court' jurisdiction includes these primary courts:

- A Central Provincial Primary Court
- Juvenile Court, which **deals with** cases involving citizens under 18 years of age
- A **Commercial** Primary Court that deals with business and commerce cases
- A District Primary Court, which deals with all ordinary criminal, civil, and family cases
- Family Issues Primary Court, which deals with family cases such as divorce and marriage

The Dewans (divisions) of the Central Primary Court has one head and no more than four members. Based on the article 41 of the Law on Organization and Jurisdiction of Courts, a Central Primary Court is comprised of the following Dewans:

- General Criminal Dewan
- Civil Dewan



- **Public** Rights Dewan
- Public Security Dewan
- Traffic Criminal Dewan

Central Provincial Primary Courts resolve the following **disputes** at the primary level in accordance with law:

- General criminal cases are resolved by the General Criminal Dewan
- Civil disputes between individuals are resolved by the Civil Dewan
- Civil disputes between natural and legal individuals or entities, or civil dispute among legal entities are resolved by the Public Rights Dewan
- Criminal cases of public security and interest, drug trafficking, and other crimes are resolved by the Public Security Dewan
- Traffic criminal cases are resolved by the Traffic-related Crimes Dewan



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, the phrase **deal with** is closest in meaning to  
 (A) To talk to somebody  
 (B) To achieve something  
 (C) To add a clause in a written legal document  
 (D) To take action in order to solve a problem
2. In paragraph one, it can be inferred that the Commercial Primary Court deals with  
 (A) Private business cases  
 (B) Commerce cases  
 (C) Business cases  
 (D) All of the above are true
3. In paragraph one, the word **commercial** is closest in meaning to  
 (A) Money  
 (B) Business  
 (C) Sale  
 (D) Purchase
4. In paragraph two, the word **public** is closest in meaning to  
 (A) Military  
 (B) Governmental  
 (C) relating to or involving people in general  
 (D) Relating to criminal offenses
5. In paragraph three, the word **dispute** is closest in meaning to



- (A) Agreement
- (B) Argument
- (C) Consensus
- (D) Deal

## Grammar

### Using Reflexive Pronouns

| Using Reflexive Pronouns                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Examples                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |               |                  |                 |                   |                                 |                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------|
| <p>When <b>-self</b> is added to my, your, him, her, it, and <b>-selves</b> to our, your, and them, we get reflexive pronouns.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A <b>reflexive pronoun</b> usually refers to the subject of a sentence.</li> <li>Sometimes reflexive pronouns are used for <b>emphasis</b></li> <li>The expression by + a reflexive pronoun usually means "alone".</li> </ul> | <table border="0"> <tr> <td><b>myself</b></td><td><b>ourselves</b></td></tr> <tr> <td><b>yourself</b></td><td><b>yourselves</b></td></tr> <tr> <td><b>himself, herself, itself</b></td><td><b>themselves</b></td></tr> </table> <p>The murderer killed <b>himself</b> when he found out that he had been sentenced to death.</p> <p>I <b>myself</b> robbed an old woman.</p> <p>The defendant said, "I have committed all the crimes by myself and my friend is innocent."</p> | <b>myself</b> | <b>ourselves</b> | <b>yourself</b> | <b>yourselves</b> | <b>himself, herself, itself</b> | <b>themselves</b> |
| <b>myself</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <b>ourselves</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |               |                  |                 |                   |                                 |                   |
| <b>yourself</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <b>yourselves</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |               |                  |                 |                   |                                 |                   |
| <b>himself, herself, itself</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <b>themselves</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |               |                  |                 |                   |                                 |                   |

## Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct phrases to complete the following sentences.

- I can't help you, my friend. You have to bring the murderer to justice \_\_\_\_\_. (by yourself, by himself, by yourselves)
- You may think Ahmad is telling the truth about his friend's death, but I \_\_\_\_\_ don't believe him. (yourself, ourselves, myself)
- It is important for all of us to be honest with \_\_\_\_\_ and do what is right. (myself, ourselves, yourselves)
- I have to tell you, my friends. You don't need to hire a lawyer as you \_\_\_\_\_ have to take care of that problem. (yourself, yourselves, ourselves)
- The defendant was a lawyer. Therefore, she decided to defend \_\_\_\_\_. (himself, myself, herself)
- The prosecutor \_\_\_\_\_ solicited money from the defendant in exchange for dropping charges against him. (themselves, myself, himself)
- A woman down the street committed suicide. We were all shocked by the news that she had killed \_\_\_\_\_. (myself, ourselves, herself)
- The Attorney General \_\_\_\_\_ ordered the arrest of the minister who was accused of drug trafficking. (himself, yourself, myself)

9. The defendant said, "I will defend \_\_\_\_\_ in the trial and I don't need an attorney." (herself, himself, myself)
10. The two robbers denied any involvement in the bank robbery. However, the police believe the two men robbed the bank \_\_\_\_\_. (by themselves, by himself, by ourselves)

## Chapter Ten

### Appeals Courts

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word              | Meaning            | #  | Word             | Meaning          |
|---|-------------------|--------------------|----|------------------|------------------|
| 1 | Chief (n)         | رئیس               | 10 | Role (n)         | نقش، وظیفه       |
| 2 | Qualification (n) | شرایط لازم         | 11 | Application (n)  | استفاده، درخواست |
| 3 | Competency (n)    | شایستگی، لیاقت     | 12 | Branch (n)       | بخش              |
| 4 | Deputy (n)        | معاون              | 13 | Personnel (n)    | کارکنان          |
| 5 | To appeal (v)     | استیناف خواستن     | 14 | Conflict (n)     | نزاع، کشمکش      |
| 6 | To confirm (v)    | تائید کردن         | 15 | Authorized (adj) | مجاز             |
| 7 | To repeal (v)     | دفع کردن، لغو کردن | 16 | Structure (n)    | ساختار           |
| 8 | Exclusively (adv) | منحصراً            | 17 | To breach (v)    | نقض کردن         |
| 9 | Vital (adj)       | اساسی، حیاتی       | 18 | Board (n)        | هیئت             |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. A new **chief** of the armed forces has just been appointed.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. You'll never get a good job if you don't have the right **qualifications**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The minister's **competency** in handling the situation is questioned.  
Some people accuse him of being unable to make the right decisions.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. I'm acting as **deputy** while the boss is away.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The law that people under 18 are not allowed to drive was **repealed**.  
Now, anyone who is older than 16 can drive.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. This offer is available **exclusively** to our established customers.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The Appeals Court plays a **vital** role in resolving criminal cases  
appealed at the lower court level.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The bank has opened several new **branches** in town.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. He and his father were always in **conflict**. His father is from the old  
generation and he is from the new generation.

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. She started in the firm by making the tea and now she is a **board** member.

- a. a person who is given the power to do something when the leader of a group is away
- b. a part of something larger
- c. the person in charge of a group or organization
- d. a disagreement between people with opposing opinions or principles
- e. the action of making a law or rule invalid
- f. the group of people who are responsible for monitoring the business of a company or organization
- g. the ability to do something well
- h. only
- i. qualities, abilities or accomplishments that make one suitable for a position or task
- j. extremely important



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of the Appeals Court and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What does the Appeals Court do?
2. What is the composition of the Appeals Court?
3. What are the Dewans of the Appeals Court?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. Which of the following is not true about the Appeals Court?
  - (A) The Appeals Court can correct, breach, amend, confirm, or repeal the rulings of the lower courts
  - (B) The rulings of the of the Appeals Court plays a vital role in the future of the defendant
  - (C) The Appeals Court holds jurisdiction over the rulings appealed at the primary court level



- (D) The decision about the future of the accused is not exclusively within the jurisdiction of the Appeals Court
2. Which of the following is true about the Appeals Court?
- (A) There are five Appeals Court in each province in Afghanistan
  - (B) There is only one Appeals Court in Afghanistan that is established in the capital
  - (C) All cases appealed will be referred to the Appeals Court in the capital
  - (D) The Appeals Court is established in all the provinces of Afghanistan
3. What will happen if there is a conflict over jurisdiction of criminal cases between two courts?
- (A) The case will be referred to the Supreme Court
  - (B) An authorized board may decide which court has the jurisdiction to decide the case
  - (C) The case will be resolved with mutual understanding
  - (D) The case will be referred to the lower courts
4. How many judicial members may a Dewan of the Appeals Court have?
- (A) Up to nine judicial members but no more than nine
  - (B) Up to ten judicial members but no more than ten
  - (C) Up to four judicial members but no more than four
  - (D) Up to six judicial members but no more than six



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

The Appeals Court is established in all of Afghanistan's provinces and has jurisdiction over the **rulings** and decisions of cases appealed at the primary court level. While resolving cases, a Appeals Court may reconsider the whole legal process and may correct, breach, **amend**, confirm, or repeal the rulings and decisions of the lower courts. The decision about the future of the accused is exclusively within the jurisdictions of the Appeals Court, since the court's decisions and rulings are final.

The Appeals Court is composed of a chief of the court, heads of Dewans, and other judicial members. The Head of each Appeals Court, each judge, and Head of each Dewan shall be responsible for deciding cases in a timely manner according to the law and for explaining the **grounds** for their decision. If there is a conflict of jurisdiction in criminal cases between two Courts of Appeals, an authorized board made up of the Chief of the Appeals Court and the heads of divisions may decide on which court has the jurisdiction to decide the case.





The Appeals Court is divided into divisions, or Dewans. Currently, there are six Dewans in the Appeals Court. The Supreme Court may, as needed, establish other Dewans within the structure of the Appeals Court with the President's **approval**. Each Dewan in the Appeals Court consists of up to six judicial members, but no more than six. The Appeals Court contains the following Dewans:

- General Criminal Dewan
- Public Security Dewan
- Civil and Family Dewan
- Public Rights Dewan
- Commercial Dewan



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, the word **rulings** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Decree  
(B) Decision  
(C) Acceptance  
(D) Refusal
2. In paragraph one, the word **amend** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Improve  
(B) Reconsider  
(C) Edit something  
(D) Change the words of a text
3. In paragraph two, it is stated that the Appeals Court is composed of  
(A) Chief of the court  
(B) Head of each Dewan  
(C) Judicial members  
(D) All of the above are true
4. In paragraph two, the word **ground** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Land  
(B) Floor  
(C) Opinion  
(D) Reason
5. In paragraph three, the word **approval** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Denial  
(B) Disagreement  
(C) Support  
(D) Authorization



## Grammar

### Possessive Nouns

| Possessive Nouns                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Examples                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                           |   |                         |              |   |                       |       |   |                |         |   |                  |        |   |                 |         |   |                           |                     |   |                         |               |   |                       |             |   |                     |            |   |                    |         |   |                  |             |   |                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|---|-------------------------|--------------|---|-----------------------|-------|---|----------------|---------|---|------------------|--------|---|-----------------|---------|---|---------------------------|---------------------|---|-------------------------|---------------|---|-----------------------|-------------|---|---------------------|------------|---|--------------------|---------|---|------------------|-------------|---|----------------------|
| <p>To show possession, add an apostrophe (') and -s to a singular noun.</p> <p>(a) If a singular noun ends in -s, there are two possible forms:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Add an apostrophe and -s:</li><li>2. Add only an apostrophe:</li></ol> <p>(b) Add only an apostrophe to a plural noun that ends in -s.</p> <p>(c) Add an apostrophe and -s to plural noun that do not end in -s.</p> | <p>The <b>defendant's</b> alibi proved of his innocence.</p> <p><b>Witness's</b> testimony</p> <p><b>Witness'</b> testimony</p> <table><tr><td><b>Singular Nouns</b></td><td>-</td><td><b>Possessive Forms</b></td></tr><tr><td>the criminal</td><td>-</td><td><b>the criminal's</b></td></tr><tr><td>Ahmad</td><td>-</td><td><b>Ahmad's</b></td></tr><tr><td>my wife</td><td>-</td><td><b>my wife's</b></td></tr><tr><td>a lady</td><td>-</td><td><b>a lady's</b></td></tr><tr><td>witness</td><td>-</td><td><b>witness's/witness'</b></td></tr></table> <p>The <b>lawyers'</b> claim was rejected by the court.</p> <p>The <b>women's</b> rights have been violated in this country for a long time.</p> <table><tr><td><b>Plural Nouns</b></td><td>-</td><td><b>Possessive Forms</b></td></tr><tr><td>the criminals</td><td>-</td><td><b>the criminals'</b></td></tr><tr><td>their wives</td><td>-</td><td><b>their wives'</b></td></tr><tr><td>the ladies</td><td>-</td><td><b>the ladies'</b></td></tr><tr><td>the men</td><td>-</td><td><b>the men's</b></td></tr><tr><td>my children</td><td>-</td><td><b>my children's</b></td></tr></table> | <b>Singular Nouns</b>     | - | <b>Possessive Forms</b> | the criminal | - | <b>the criminal's</b> | Ahmad | - | <b>Ahmad's</b> | my wife | - | <b>my wife's</b> | a lady | - | <b>a lady's</b> | witness | - | <b>witness's/witness'</b> | <b>Plural Nouns</b> | - | <b>Possessive Forms</b> | the criminals | - | <b>the criminals'</b> | their wives | - | <b>their wives'</b> | the ladies | - | <b>the ladies'</b> | the men | - | <b>the men's</b> | my children | - | <b>my children's</b> |
| <b>Singular Nouns</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>Possessive Forms</b>   |   |                         |              |   |                       |       |   |                |         |   |                  |        |   |                 |         |   |                           |                     |   |                         |               |   |                       |             |   |                     |            |   |                    |         |   |                  |             |   |                      |
| the criminal                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>the criminal's</b>     |   |                         |              |   |                       |       |   |                |         |   |                  |        |   |                 |         |   |                           |                     |   |                         |               |   |                       |             |   |                     |            |   |                    |         |   |                  |             |   |                      |
| Ahmad                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>Ahmad's</b>            |   |                         |              |   |                       |       |   |                |         |   |                  |        |   |                 |         |   |                           |                     |   |                         |               |   |                       |             |   |                     |            |   |                    |         |   |                  |             |   |                      |
| my wife                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>my wife's</b>          |   |                         |              |   |                       |       |   |                |         |   |                  |        |   |                 |         |   |                           |                     |   |                         |               |   |                       |             |   |                     |            |   |                    |         |   |                  |             |   |                      |
| a lady                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>a lady's</b>           |   |                         |              |   |                       |       |   |                |         |   |                  |        |   |                 |         |   |                           |                     |   |                         |               |   |                       |             |   |                     |            |   |                    |         |   |                  |             |   |                      |
| witness                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>witness's/witness'</b> |   |                         |              |   |                       |       |   |                |         |   |                  |        |   |                 |         |   |                           |                     |   |                         |               |   |                       |             |   |                     |            |   |                    |         |   |                  |             |   |                      |
| <b>Plural Nouns</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>Possessive Forms</b>   |   |                         |              |   |                       |       |   |                |         |   |                  |        |   |                 |         |   |                           |                     |   |                         |               |   |                       |             |   |                     |            |   |                    |         |   |                  |             |   |                      |
| the criminals                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>the criminals'</b>     |   |                         |              |   |                       |       |   |                |         |   |                  |        |   |                 |         |   |                           |                     |   |                         |               |   |                       |             |   |                     |            |   |                    |         |   |                  |             |   |                      |
| their wives                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>their wives'</b>       |   |                         |              |   |                       |       |   |                |         |   |                  |        |   |                 |         |   |                           |                     |   |                         |               |   |                       |             |   |                     |            |   |                    |         |   |                  |             |   |                      |
| the ladies                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>the ladies'</b>        |   |                         |              |   |                       |       |   |                |         |   |                  |        |   |                 |         |   |                           |                     |   |                         |               |   |                       |             |   |                     |            |   |                    |         |   |                  |             |   |                      |
| the men                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>the men's</b>          |   |                         |              |   |                       |       |   |                |         |   |                  |        |   |                 |         |   |                           |                     |   |                         |               |   |                       |             |   |                     |            |   |                    |         |   |                  |             |   |                      |
| my children                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>my children's</b>      |   |                         |              |   |                       |       |   |                |         |   |                  |        |   |                 |         |   |                           |                     |   |                         |               |   |                       |             |   |                     |            |   |                    |         |   |                  |             |   |                      |

## Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the possessive nouns to complete the following sentences.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ husband was tried in court last week. (Mrs. Ahmadi, Mrs. Ahmadi's, Mrs. Ahmadis')
2. My \_\_\_\_\_ car was stolen from the parking lot last week. (wife, wife's, wives')
3. They filed a lawsuit against my \_\_\_\_\_ wife in a court last week. (boss, boss's, bossess')
4. The evil man blackmailed all his \_\_\_\_\_ husbands. (sisters, sisters's, sisters')

5. His \_\_\_\_\_ property was seized by the loan agency when she went bankrupt. (sister, sister's, sisters')
6. The accused said, "I will appeal against \_\_\_\_\_ verdict."  
(today, today's, todays's)
7. Some doubts have been expressed about the \_\_\_\_\_ testimony.  
(child, child's, childs')
8. The jury doubted the \_\_\_\_\_ testimonies. (children, childrens', children's)
9. The police tested the blood on the \_\_\_\_\_ blades. (knives, knives', knife's)
10. The \_\_\_\_\_ husband was found guilty of two counts of robbery. (woman, womans', woman's)

## Chapter Eleven

### The Supreme Court

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word              | Meaning       | #  | Word                 | Meaning            |
|---|-------------------|---------------|----|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1 | To create (v)     | ایجاد کردن    | 10 | To analyze (v)       | تجزیه و تحلیل کردن |
| 2 | To approve (v)    | تصویب کردن    | 11 | To file (v)          | اقامه کردن         |
| 3 | Rotation (n)      | چرخش، دوران   | 12 | Authority (n)        | قدرت، اختیار       |
| 4 | Basis (n)         | اساس          | 13 | To assign (v)        | تعیین کردن، گماشتن |
| 5 | Justice (n)       | عدالت         | 14 | To ensure (v)        | تضمین کردن         |
| 6 | Term (n)          | دوره، مدت     | 15 | To interpret (v)     | تفسیر کردن         |
| 7 | Chief Justice (n) | قاضی القضاات  | 16 | Constitutional (adj) | مطابق قانون اساسی  |
| 8 | Advisor (n)       | مشاور         | 17 | To overturn (v)      | نقض کردن           |
| 9 | Practical (adj)   | عملی، کاربردی | 18 | Accurate (adj)       | درست، دقیق         |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. God **created** the world and all the living things in it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The court **approved** the sale of the property and a construction company bought it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The earth completes 365 **rotations** about its axis every year.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The president is expected to name a new Supreme Court **justice** within the next few days.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. She is the financial **advisor** to the company. The company has had tremendous growth since she came in.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Qualifications are important, but **practical** experience is always an advantage for getting a good job.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Researchers **analyzed** the renewable energy system to see whether it would work in Afghanistan.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The police **filed** charges against the two suspects: One was accused of larceny and the other of robbery.

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. A jury should not **interpret** the silence of a defendant as a sign of guilt.

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. The Appeals Court **overturned** the earlier decision. A new trial is scheduled to take place on Monday, April 20.

- a. to officially record something, especially in a court of law
- b. to accept, permit, or officially agree to something
- c. to decide what the intended meaning of something is
- d. to make something new, especially to invent something
- e. to study or examine something in detail in order to discover more about it
- f. turning in a circle, especially around a fixed point
- g. relating to experience, reality, or action, rather than ideas or imagination
- h. a judge in a court of law
- i. to change a legal decision
- j. someone whose job is to give advice about a subject



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of the Supreme Court and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is the main duty of the Supreme Court?
2. How many members does the Supreme Court have?
3. How many divisions does the Supreme Court have?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. Which of the following is not a Dewan (division) of the Supreme Court?
  - (A) Commercial Dewan
  - (B) Civil Society Dewan
  - (C) General Criminal Dewan
  - (D) Public Security Dewan
2. Who selects the Chief Justice?



- (A) The Attorney General
  - (B) The Minister of Justice
  - (C) The President
  - (D) The members of the Supreme Court
3. How many judicial advisors may the Supreme Court have?
- (A) Four advisors for each division
  - (B) 30
  - (C) It is decided by the Supreme Court
  - (D) 36
4. Which of the following is not a duty of the Supreme Court?
- (A) Interpreting the constitution
  - (B) Passing laws
  - (C) Deciding over the rulings of a lower court if appealed to the Supreme Court
  - (D) Ensuring the rule of law



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

The Supreme Court (Stera Mahkama) **constitutes** the highest judicial authority in the Islamic Republic of Afghanistan. **It** was created by the constitution of Afghanistan, which was approved on January 4, 2004. The Supreme Court is made of the following five divisions, or Dewans: the General Criminal Dewan, the Public Security Dewan, the Civil and Public Rights Dewan, the Military Dewan, and the Commercial Dewan. Each Division is headed by a member of the Supreme Court who is selected by the Chief Justice for a period of one year on a rotation basis.

The Supreme Court is composed of nine members. The nine justices on the court are appointed for 10-year terms by the president, with the approval of the Wolesi Jirga (House of People). Each justice can only serve one term. The president selects which of the nine members should **serve** as Chief Justice.

The Supreme Court has judicial advisors and their total number is decided by the court. These judicial advisors must have at least ten years' practical judicial work experience. They analyze and study the cases filed with the Supreme Court and provide a report to the judicial meeting for decision to be made. The Chief Justice has the **authority** to assign judicial advisors to the various Dewans.

The main duty of the Supreme Court is to ensure the rule of law. The Supreme Court interprets the constitution and ensures that all laws are constitutional. Additionally,



the Supreme Court can overturn the decisions of a lower court. For example, if a person is found guilty by a lower court and he appeals to the Supreme Court, the court can decide to overturn the original ruling and refer **it** back to the lower court if the ruling was contrary to the law. However, if the ruling is found to be **substantially** accurate, the relevant Dewan of the Supreme Court can confirm the ruling.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

Read the following questions and circle the best answer.

1. In paragraph one, it is stated that the Supreme Court has the highest
  - (A) Executive power of Afghanistan
  - (B) Judicial power of Afghanistan
  - (C) Legislative power of Afghanistan
  - (D) All of the above are true
2. In paragraph one, the word **constitutes** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Compose
  - (B) Show
  - (C) Be considered as
  - (D) Allow
3. In paragraph one, what does the word **it** refer to?
  - (A) Authority
  - (B) Judiciary
  - (C) Court
  - (D) The Supreme Court
4. Who selects the head of each Dewan of the Supreme Court?
  - (A) The President of Afghanistan
  - (B) The Parliament
  - (C) The General Attorney
  - (D) The Chief Justice
5. How long does the head of each Dewan of the Supreme Court hold office?
  - (A) One year
  - (B) Two years
  - (C) Three years
  - (D) Four years
6. In paragraph two, the word **serve** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Provide
  - (B) Work for
  - (C) Help



(D) Accomplish

7. What is the minimum judicial work experience for advisors to the Supreme Court must have?
- (A) five years  
(B) 10 years  
(C) 15 years  
(D) 20 years
8. In paragraph three, the word **authority** is closest in meaning to
- (A) A powerful person  
(B) Knowledge  
(C) Experience  
(D) Legal right or ability
9. In paragraph four, what does the word **it** refer to?
- (A) The Supreme Court  
(B) The court  
(C) Ruling  
(D) Lower court
10. In paragraph four, the word **substantially** is closest in meaning to
- (A) Insignificantly  
(B) Significantly  
(C) Easily  
(D) To some extent

## Grammar

### *A Few and Few - A Little and Little*

| A Few and Few, A Little and Little                                                                                     | Examples                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>A few</b> and <b>a little</b> give a positive idea; they indicate that something exists or is present.              | She has been here only two weeks, but she has already been fined for speeding <b>a few</b> times.<br>There is <b>a little</b> hope that the police will find the missing girl before something bad happens to her. |
| <b>Few</b> and <b>little</b> (without <b>a</b> ) give a negative idea; they indicate that something is largely absent. | He is among the <b>few</b> people I can trust.<br>There is <b>little</b> hope for his survival. He has been stabbed over 30 times.                                                                                 |
| <b>Very</b> (+ <b>few/little</b> ) makes the negative idea stronger, and the number/amount smaller.                    | The pickpocket stole <b>very little</b> money, something less than one dollars.                                                                                                                                    |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>A few</b> and <b>few</b> are used with plural countable nouns.</li></ul>      | few/ a few weeks                                                                                                                                                                                                   |



|                                                                      |                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| • <b>A little</b> and <b>little</b> are used with uncountable nouns. | little/ a little money |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|

### Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct answer to complete the following sentences.

1. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ minutes? I want to talk to you about the two human rights violation cases. (few, a few, little, a little)
2. The judge gave the young clerk a good recommendation because she makes \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes in her daily work. (few, a few, little, a little)
3. After the police chief read the murder report thoroughly, he had only \_\_\_\_\_ questions to ask. The report was complete and very comprehensive. (few, a few, little, a little)
4. The speaker of the Supreme Court didn't give a lot of information in the news conference. As a result, \_\_\_\_\_ journalists had questions at the end of the news conference. (few, a few, little, a little)
5. Driving downtown to the Supreme Court for interviewing the Chief Justice was easy. We got there quickly because there was \_\_\_\_\_ traffic. (few, a few, little, a little)
6. The man who was convicted of petty larceny was imprisoned for \_\_\_\_\_ days. (few, a few, little, a little)
7. Ahmad has a lot of trouble adjusting to the law. He has been convicted of larceny and petty theft \_\_\_\_\_ times. (few, a few, little, a little)
8. The police can hold an accused under custody only for \_\_\_\_\_ days. (few, a few, little, a little)
9. No one believed in his claim that he was innocent. He had lied so many times that even his close friends had \_\_\_\_\_ trust in its truth. (few, a few, little, a little)
10. With \_\_\_\_\_ training, she could handle the job very well; even one of the judicial advisors praised her work. (few, a few, little, a little)

## Chapter Twelve

### Special Courts

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word                | Meaning       | #  | Word                 | Meaning     |
|---|---------------------|---------------|----|----------------------|-------------|
| 1 | To anticipate (v)   | انتظار داشتن  | 10 | Juvenile (adj)       | نوجوان      |
| 2 | To establish (v)    | تاسیس کردن    | 11 | Relevant (adj)       | مربوط       |
| 3 | Treason (n)         | خیانت ملی     | 12 | Division (n)         | بخش         |
| 4 | To dismiss (v)      | اخراج کردن    | 13 | Entity (n)           | نهاد        |
| 5 | To appoint (v)      | منسوب کردن    | 14 | Head (n)             | رئیس        |
| 6 | To resolve (v)      | حل کردن       | 15 | To require (v)       | مستلزم بودن |
| 7 | Appellate Court (n) | محکمه استیناف | 16 | Administrative (adj) | اداری       |
| 8 | Dispute (n)         | نزاع، کشمکش   | 17 | Respective (adj)     | مربوطه      |
| 9 | Specialized (adj)   | تخصصی         | 18 | Judicial (adj)       | قضایی       |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The tourists didn't **anticipate** any troubles from the rebels and went hiking. However, two of them were taken hostage on the way to their camps.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. He was accused of **treason** for selling government secrets to the enemy.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. He has been **dismissed** from his job for incompetence. He cannot even write a simple report.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. He has been very slow to **resolve** our transportation problems. We still come to the office by taxi.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. They have been unable to settle the **dispute** over their poor working conditions and how to make them better.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The juvenile court deals with cases of **juvenile** crime or civil actions brought against young people.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Education should be **relevant** to people's future goals. For instance, if a person wants to become an engineer, he should study what is needed to become an engineer.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The organizations work closely together, but are separate legal **entities**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The **head** of the criminology department is a nice man.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. You are **required** by law to stop your car after an accident.
- a. to remove someone from their job, usually because they have done something wrong
  - b. connected with what is happening or being discussed
  - c. to imagine or expect that something will happen
  - d. someone in charge of or leading an organization, group, etc.
  - e. an argument or disagreement
  - f. lack of loyalty to one's country or committing a crime against one's country
  - g. to solve or end a problem or difficulty
  - h. relating to a young person who is not yet old enough to be considered an adult
  - i. something that exists apart from other things, having its own independent existence
  - j. to need or make necessary



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of the special courts and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What will happen if the president is guilty of treason?
2. What are some of the special courts that the Supreme Court has established?
3. What are some of the duties of the Central Provincial Primary Courts?





### Listening for Details

Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.

1. Which one of the following special courts deals with crimes committed by young people?  
(A) Appellate Narcotics Court  
(B) Specialized Family Court  
(C) Specialized Juvenile Court  
(D) Primary Court of Property Disputes
2. What will happen if the president is found guilty of treason?  
(A) He/she will be dismissed  
(B) The case will be referred to a special court  
(C) He/she will be dismissed and pardoned  
(D) Both (A) and (B)
3. Which of the following is not true about the divisions of the Central Provincial Primary Courts?  
(A) Resolve traffic criminal cases by the Traffic Cases Division  
(B) Resolve general criminal cases by the General Criminal Division  
(C) Resolve juvenile crimes and civil disputes by the Public Security Division  
(D) Resolve civil disputes between natural persons by the Civil Division
4. What does the Public Rights Division do?  
(A) Resolve criminal cases of public security and interest, drug trafficking, and other crimes  
(B) Resolve civil disputes between natural persons  
(C) Resolve civil disputes between natural and legal individuals or entities  
(D) Both (A) and (C)



### Reading

Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.

The establishment of special courts is **anticipated** in the constitution of Afghanistan and it includes rules for establishing such courts. For instance, if the president is accused of treason and the accusation is backed by the Loya Jirga, he or she will be



dismissed and the case will be referred to a special court. The special court should **be composed of** three members of the Wolesi Jirga (House of People), three members of the Supreme Court appointed by the Loya Jirga, and the chair of the Meshrano Jirga (House of Elders).

The Supreme Court has established Special Courts within the **structure** of the Supreme Court to resolve special cases like family issues. These courts include the:

- Primary and Appellate Narcotics Courts
- Primary and Appellate Courts of Crimes against Internal and External Security
- Specialized Family Court
- Specialized Juvenile Court

The Central Provincial Primary Courts may also have special divisions for resolving cases at the primary level:

- The General Criminal Division resolves general criminal cases
- The Civil Division resolves civil disputes between individuals
- The Public Rights Division resolves civil disputes between natural and legal individuals or between legal entities
- The Public Security Division resolves criminal cases of public security and interest, drug trafficking, and other crimes
- The Traffic Cases Division resolves traffic criminal cases

The head of the Central Provincial Primary Court leads and manages the judicial and administrative activities of its divisions and may attend their meetings when required. Heads of the primary court divisions lead their own meetings. In case the head of the primary court **presides** over judicial meeting within the division, the head of the respective division may thus be considered as member. The Head of the General Criminal Division is, at the same time, the Deputy Head of the Central Primary Court.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, the word **anticipate** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Expect  
(B) Refer  
(C) Suggest  
(D) Deny
2. In paragraph one, the expression **be composed of something** is closest in meaning to  
(A) being formed from various parts  
(B) being included  
(C) being part of something larger



- (D) being a member of an organization
3. In paragraph two, the word **structure** is closest in meaning to  
 (A) Group  
 (B) Inside  
 (C) Arrangement  
 (D) Outside
4. In paragraph Three, what does the Civil Division do?  
 (A) Resolves crimes committed by individuals  
 (B) Resolves traffic criminal cases  
 (C) Resolves drug-related cases  
 (D) Resolves disputes between natural persons
5. In paragraph four, the word **preside** is closest in meaning to  
 (A) Instruct  
 (B) Direct  
 (C) Be in charge of  
 (D) Organize

### Grammar

*Singular Expression of Quantity: One, Each, Every*

| Singular Expression of Quantity:<br>One, Each, Every                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Examples                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>One, each, and every</b> are followed immediately by singular countable nouns (never plural nouns, never uncountable nouns).</p> <p>Note: <b>Each</b> and <b>every</b> have essentially the same meaning. <b>Each</b> is used when the speaker is thinking of one person/thing at a time. However, <b>every</b> is used when the speaker means "all".</p> <p><b>One of, each of, and every one of</b> are followed by specific plural countable nouns (never singular nouns, never uncountable nouns).</p> | <p><b>One</b> prisoner was released.<br/> <b>Each</b> prisoner served his sentence.<br/> <b>Every</b> person is entitled the freedom to choose his or her spouse.</p> <p><b>Each</b> prisoner served his sentence. = Ahmad served his sentence. Wali served his sentence.<br/> <b>Every</b> prisoner was released from the old prison. = All of the prisoners were released for the old prison.</p> <p><b>One of the judges</b> was not on time to the trial.<br/> <b>Each of the judges</b> was required to attend the trial session.<br/> <b>Every one of the judges</b> wears a black robe.</p> |

### Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct answer to complete the following sentences.

1. There has been only one \_\_\_\_\_ in our town this year. (homicide, homicides)
2. Every one of the \_\_\_\_\_ should be severely punished. (rapist, rapists)
3. The police interrogated each of the \_\_\_\_\_ before moving on with the case. (suspect, suspects)
4. Every \_\_\_\_\_ came to the witness stand and testified against the defendant. (witness, witnesses)
5. Each of \_\_\_\_\_ will be tried in the Juvenile Court. (them, him)
6. The police arrested each of the \_\_\_\_\_ accused of second-degree murder. (suspect, suspects)
7. Each of the \_\_\_\_\_ in our town is armed with an AK47. (police officer, police officers)
8. One of the \_\_\_\_\_ was raped and then her body was dumped in the river. (victim, victims)
9. Each \_\_\_\_\_ should be brought to justice. (criminal, criminals)
10. Every \_\_\_\_\_ was searched by the police for the missing teenager. (place, places)

## Unit Four:

### Criminal Procedure in Afghanistan



## Chapter Thirteen

### Crimes in Afghanistan

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word               | Meaning     | #  | Word                   | Meaning        |
|---|--------------------|-------------|----|------------------------|----------------|
| 1 | Crime (n)          | جرم         | 10 | Unintentional (adj)    | غير عمدی       |
| 2 | Classification (n) | طبقه بندی   | 11 | Morally (adv)          | اخلاقاً        |
| 3 | Obscenity (n)      | قباحت       | 12 | Murder (n)             | قتل            |
| 4 | Intentional (adj)  | عمدی        | 13 | To deem (v)            | پنداشتن        |
| 5 | To prove (v)       | ثابت کردن   | 14 | Misdemeanor (n)        | جنحه           |
| 6 | Negligence (n)     | غفلت، اهمال | 15 | To commit (v)          | مرتکب شدن      |
| 7 | To prohibit (v)    | منع کردن    | 16 | Consequences (n)       | پیامدها، نتایج |
| 8 | Felony (n)         | جنايت       | 17 | Capital Punishment (n) | مجازات اعدام   |
| 9 | To punish (v)      | مجازات کردن | 18 | Rape (n)               | تجاوز جنسی     |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. In Afghanistan, there are three legal **classifications** of crimes: a felony, a misdemeanor, and an obscenity.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The police are not sure whether the fire that burned down the hotel was accidental or **intentional**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. They suspected that she had killed him but they could never actually **prove** that it was her.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The government introduced a law **prohibiting** tobacco advertisements on TV.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Those responsible for war crimes must be brought to court and **punished**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. For a teacher to hit a child is not just **morally** wrong, but also illegal.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The area has now been **deemed** safe from land mines. Therefore, we can go and play soccer there.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Crimes that are not as serious as felonies are called **misdemeanors**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. She didn't take her mom's advice and married the old man. Now she is suffering from the **consequences** of her wrong decision.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Capital **punishment** is only applicable to criminals who have committed murder.
- a. planned or intended
  - b. a crime considered to be less serious
  - c. the discussion of objects or ideas into groups
  - d. punishment by death, as ordered by a legal system
  - e. a penalty inflicted for committing an offense or wrongdoing
  - f. the result, or outcome of an earlier action
  - g. based on principles that you or people in general consider to be right, honest or acceptable
  - h. to consider or judge something in a particular way
  - i. to show that something is true
  - j. to officially forbid something



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of crimes in Afghanistan and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. In Afghanistan, what are the three classifications of crime?
2. What is an obscenity?
3. What are the two terms used to describe moral crimes?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. What is a felony?
  - (A) A crime that is punishable by up to five years in jail
  - (B) A crime that is punishable by three years or more in jail or capital punishment
  - (C) A crime that is punishable by imprisonment for 24 hours
  - (D) A crime that is punishable by imprisonment for more than six months



2. Which one of the following is not an example of a felony?  
(A) Murder  
(B) Rape  
(C) Robbery  
(D) Blackmail
3. Which one of the following is an example of an obscenity?  
(A) Gambling  
(B) Saying something sexual to someone else  
(C) Robbery  
(D) Forgery
4. Which one of the following is an example of an unintentional crime?  
(A) Shooting someone accidentally while hunting  
(B) Killing someone while committing robbery  
(C) Shooting someone because you hate him  
(D) Killing someone in self-defense



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

A crime is an action prohibited by the laws of a **sovereign** government. **It** is an act that is deemed against the public good of society. In Afghanistan, there are three legal classifications of crimes: a felony, a misdemeanor, and an obscenity. A felony is a crime that is punishable by three years or more in prison or capital punishment, as decided by a criminal court. Some examples of felonies in Afghanistan are murder or rape. A misdemeanor is a less serious crime that is punishable by three months to five years in prison or a cash fine of more than 3,000 Afghanis. A common misdemeanor in Afghanistan is theft. The third category of crime in Afghanistan is called an obscenity, or petty offence. An example of an obscenity is when a person says something sexual or threatening to another person. A petty offense is punishable by imprisonment by 24 hours to 3 months in prison or a cash fine of up to 3,000 Afghanis.

According to law in Afghanistan, no person can be held responsible for a crime that is not a result of his or her own criminal action. **Therefore**, a person cannot be held for a crime that he or she did not commit.

**Morally**, there are two different kinds of crimes, intentional and unintentional. An intentional crime is when a person commits the crime in a state of mind where he or she is aware of the **consequences** of their action. It must be proven in a court of law that the person, who committed the crime, did so with full intention. An example of



an intentional crime would be planning to hurt someone, and then assaulting them. Another example would be refusing to fulfill a public duty, and as a result, a crime is committed. A doctor, for instance, could refuse to treat a woman. If the woman dies as a result, the doctor has committed an intentional crime. The second moral category of a crime is an unintentional crime. An unintentional crime is when the consequences of the crime are not intended or are a mistake – the person who committed the crime did not plan or intend the consequences. Unintentional crimes are usually the result of carelessness or negligence. For example, if a man is hunting for an animal and accidentally shoots his hunting partner, **this** would be considered an unintentional crime.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, the word **sovereign** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Loyal
  - (B) Independent
  - (C) Tribal
  - (D) Foreign
2. In paragraph one, what does the word **it** refer to?
  - (A) An act
  - (B) Society
  - (C) Public good
  - (D) A crime
3. What is a misdemeanor?
  - (A) A crime punishable by more than three years in jail
  - (B) A crime punishable by 3 months to 5 years in jail
  - (C) A crime punishable by a fine of more than 3,000 Afghanis
  - (D) Both (B) and (C)
4. What is the punishment for an obscenity?
  - (A) From 24 hours to 3 months in jail
  - (B) A fine of more than 3,000 Afghanis
  - (C) A cash fine of up to 3,000 Afghanis
  - (D) Both (A) and (C)
5. In paragraph two, it is stated that
  - (A) The family of the person who has committed a crime is responsible
  - (B) The brother of the person who has committed a crime should also be punished
  - (C) Only close relatives of the criminal should be punished



- (D) Only the person who committed the crime is responsible
6. In paragraph two, the word **therefore** is used. Another word or phrase that could replace therefore is
- (A) Yet
  - (B) Furthermore
  - (C) Consequently
  - (D) In addition
7. In paragraph three, the word **morally** is closest in meaning to
- (A) Legally
  - (B) Logically
  - (C) Ethically
  - (D) Intentionally
8. In paragraph three, the word **consequence** is closest in meaning to
- (A) Cause
  - (B) Result
  - (C) Effect
  - (D) Reason
9. What does the word **this** refer to in paragraph three?
- (A) An intentional crime
  - (B) An unintentional crime
  - (C) Public duty
  - (D) refusing to fulfill a public duty and a crime results
10. What is an unintentional crime?
- (A) A crime that results from the refusal to fulfill a public duty
  - (B) A crime that results from carelessness and negligence
  - (C) A crime that results from hatred and maliciousness
  - (D) Both (A) and (B)

## Grammar

### Passive Voice

| Passive Voice                                                                                                                                                                             | Example                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>The <b>passive voice</b> is most frequently used when it is not known or important to know exactly who performs an action.</p> <p>Form of the passive: <b>be + past participle</b></p> | <p>ACTIVE: Somebody <b>murdered</b> an attorney in Kabul.</p> <p>PASSIVE: An attorney <b>was murdered</b> in Kabul.</p> <p>ACTIVE: The policeman <b>helped</b> the victim.</p> <p>PASSIVE: The victim <b>was helped</b> by a policeman.</p> |
| In the passive voice, the object of an                                                                                                                                                    | The <b>policeman</b> helped the <b>victim</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                             |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <p>active verb becomes the subject of the passive verb. Similarly, the subject of the active verb becomes the "<b>by phrase</b>" in the passive verb. Usually, the passive is used without a "by phrase".</p> <p>Only <b>transitive verbs</b> (verbs that are followed by an object) are used in the passive. It is not possible to use verbs such as happen, sleep, come and seem in the passive since they are <b>intransitive verbs</b> (verbs that are not followed by an object).</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <p>SUBJECT                      OBJECT</p> <p>The <b>victim</b> was helped <b>by the policeman</b>.</p> <p>ACTIVE: He <b>raped</b> a woman.<br/>PASSIVE: A woman <b>was raped</b> by him.</p> <p>ACTIVE: An accident <b>happened</b> yesterday.<br/>PASSIVE: none</p> |                     |
| <b>Tense review:</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <b>Active</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <b>Passive</b>      |
| (Present)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | He refuses                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | He is refused       |
| (Past)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | He refused                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | He was refused      |
| (Present Perfect)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | He has refused                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | He has been refused |
| (Past Perfect)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | He had refused                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | He had been refused |
| (Future)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | He will refuse                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | He will be refused  |
| (Present / modal)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | He can refuse                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | He can be refused   |

### Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb tense. It can be active or passive voice. Review the forms of the tenses above. Use those forms as a guide.

1. A crime is an action which \_\_\_\_\_ by the law of a country. (prohibits, is prohibited, prohibiting)
2. Afghanistan \_\_\_\_\_ the use or sale of alcohol. (prohibits, is prohibited, prohibiting)
3. During the Taliban regime, women \_\_\_\_\_ from working. (prohibit, were prohibited, prohibited)
4. According to the law in Afghanistan, no one \_\_\_\_\_ responsible for a crime which is not the result of his own criminal action. (can held, can hold, can be held)
5. Ahmad was arrested last week, he \_\_\_\_\_ longer than he should have been. (held, was holding, was held)
6. Ahmad was just arrested, he \_\_\_\_\_ by the police for two more days. (will hold, will be held, will be holding)
7. It \_\_\_\_\_ in a court of law that a person is guilty. (must be proven, must prove, must prove)

8. He \_\_\_\_\_ that the other person was guilty. (proved, was proved, was proven)
9. He \_\_\_\_\_ of murder and sentenced to life in prison. (convicted, convict, was convicted)

## Chapter Fourteen

### Arrest

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word                        | Meaning        | #  | Word                   | Meaning          |
|---|-----------------------------|----------------|----|------------------------|------------------|
| 1 | Custody (n)                 | توقیف، حبس     | 10 | Authorized court (n)   | محکمه با صلاحیت  |
| 2 | Law enforcement officer (n) | مجری قانون     | 11 | Authorities (n)        | مقامات           |
| 3 | To suspect (v)              | مظنون بودن     | 12 | To interrogate (v)     | استنطاق کردن     |
| 4 | To fulfill (v)              | انجام دادن     | 13 | To overrule (v)        | رد کردن          |
| 5 | Liable (adj)                | مسئول          | 14 | Primary prosecutor (n) | سارنوال ابتدائیه |
| 6 | Proceedings (n)             | مراحل          | 15 | Seizure (n)            | ضبط              |
| 7 | Freedom (n)                 | آزادی          | 16 | Detention (n)          | بازداشت، توقیف   |
| 8 | Limit (n)                   | حد             | 17 | Innocent (adj)         | بیگناه           |
| 9 | To endanger (v)             | به خطر انداختن | 18 | Release (n)            | آزادی، رهایی     |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. She will be in **custody** until her trial. The authorities fear she might escape if they release her from prison.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. No one knows who killed her, but the police **suspect** her husband.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. He has failed to **fulfill** his duties as a father. For example, he doesn't know what grade his son is in and what happened to his daughter after she dropped out of school.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The law holds parents **liable** if a child does not attend school. In other words, it is the parents' responsibility to make sure their children attend school.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Is there a **limit** on the amount of money you can claim?
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. He would never do anything to **endanger** the lives of his children.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Hundreds of protestors have been **interrogated**, answering the police's questions about the protest.



- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The decision of the lower court was **overruled** by the Appeals Court.  
The defendant was acquitted of the charges of rape and larceny.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. **Seizures** of illicit drugs have increased by 60 percent this year. For instance, the government took in over 50 tons of opium last year from drug traffickers.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. There is concern over the death of a number of political prisoners who were in **detention**.
- a. to take something or a person into possession by the police or other people with legal authority
  - b. to satisfy or complete a requirement or duty
  - c. to think or believe something to be true or probable
  - d. to put someone or something at risk
  - e. the state of being kept in prison, especially while waiting to go to court for trial
  - f. legally responsible for someone or something
  - g. the greatest amount, number or level of something that is either possible or allowed
  - h. when someone is officially imprisoned
  - i. to decide against a decision that has already been made
  - j. to ask someone a lot of questions for a long time in order to obtain information, sometimes using threats or violence



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of the arrests and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is an arrest?
2. What is the procedure of an arrest?
3. What are the different types of arrests?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. In which of the following cases can the police arrest someone?



- (A) While committing a felony or misdemeanor punishable by mid-term imprisonment
  - (B) When the police suspect someone of committing a crime
  - (C) When a person accused of committing a felony, can possibly escape
  - (D) Both (A) and (C)
2. How long can the police hold a suspect in custody?
- (A) 25 days
  - (B) 48 hours
  - (C) 24 hours
  - (D) 15 days
3. When should the initial interrogation be done?
- (A) After being convicted
  - (B) After the trial
  - (C) Immediately: within 24 hours of being arrested
  - (D) 15 days after an arrest
4. According to the constitution, how is an accused considered before being convicted of a crime in a final trial? The accused is considered
- (A) Guilty
  - (B) Suspect
  - (C) Victim
  - (D) None of the above are true



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

An arrest is the process of taking a person suspected of a crime into custody and is usually carried out by an appointed law enforcement officer. An arrest can be classified as either a criminal arrest or a civil arrest. A criminal arrest is generally the first step in a series of legal actions taken against a person suspected of committing a crime in order to bring that person to court for judgment. A civil arrest is used to make an individual to fulfill his or her legal obligation under the order of a court. It is important to note that certain privileged persons, such as representatives of foreign governments, are not liable to arrest in either civil or criminal **proceedings**.

Based on article 24 of the Afghan **constitution**, every human being has the right to freedom. **This** right has no limit, unless the individual is negatively affecting the rights of others or endangering the public interest. Police are authorized to make a criminal arrest in two situations: when a person has committed a felony or misdemeanor crime punishable by mid-term imprisonment, or when a person is accused of committing



a felony and can possibly escape. In other situations, a civil arrest can be made by the police under the order of judicial authorities.

When a police officer makes an arrest, the officer must confirm the identity of the accused and inform him or her of the reason for the arrest. The police must interrogate the suspect within 24 hours of his/her arrest and then send the results of the interrogation to the primary prosecutor and hand over the suspect immediately after the interrogation. The primary prosecutor, immediately after receiving the interrogation report, will approve it or overrule or modify it. The prosecutor can also ask for more clarification from the police officer on the **prior** proceedings.

The primary prosecutor must interrogate the suspect within 48 hours of receiving the suspect from the police and can order the suspect's release if he or she deems it unnecessary to keep the suspect in custody. For suspects accused of a misdemeanor or a felony, the primary prosecutor can order the seizure of items related to the crime while interrogating the accused. After approving a suspect's arrest and ordering the suspect's detention, a prosecutor must submit the case to a court within 15 days of the arrest. If the prosecutor fails to submit the case within 15 days, the accused must be released. The prosecutor can also ask the court to renew a suspect's custody for an additional 15 days.

According to article 25 of the Afghan constitution, innocence is the original state of an accused person. The accused is considered innocent until proven guilty in court. Hence, while the accused is in custody of the accused, the court should study the case without **delay** and order the suspect's release if the arrest is found unlawful or unnecessary.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, what is a criminal arrest?
  - (A) Arresting someone who has not paid his debts
  - (B) Arresting someone who is accused of a crime
  - (C) Arresting someone for breaching a contract
  - (D) Both (B) and (C)
2. In paragraph one, who is not liable to either civil arrest or criminal arrest?
  - (A) Foreign nationals
  - (B) People who have a lot of money
  - (C) People who work for the government
  - (D) Representative of foreign governments
3. In paragraph one, the word proceedings is used. Another word for **proceedings** is
  - (A) Procedure
  - (B) Judgment



- (C) Legal action
  - (D) Hearing
4. In paragraph two, the word **constitution** is closest in meaning to
- (A) A book
  - (B) The supreme law of a country
  - (C) Human rights
  - (D) Civil rights
5. In paragraph two, what does the phrase **this** refer to
- (A) Right
  - (B) Freedom
  - (C) Constitution
  - (D) Natural right
6. In paragraph three, the word **prior** is closest in meaning to
- (A) After
  - (B) Old
  - (C) Before
  - (D) Current
7. In paragraph three, when should the primary prosecutor interrogate the suspect?
- (A) Within 48 hours after the suspect is handed to him
  - (B) Within 15 days after the suspect is handed over
  - (C) Within 24 hours after the suspect is released
  - (D) Within three days after the suspect is handed over
8. In paragraph four, what is the maximum time a court can renew the detention of a suspect based on the request of a prosecutor?
- (A) 24 hours
  - (B) 72 hours
  - (C) 15 days
  - (D) Six months
9. In paragraph 4, the word **delay** is used. Another word for delay is
- (A) Hurry
  - (B) Wait
  - (C) Decision
  - (D) Persistence
10. In paragraph 4, "... innocence is the original state of an accused person," means that a suspect is considered
- (A) The prime suspect until proven guilty in court
  - (B) Guilty until proven guilty in court
  - (C) Criminal until proven guilty in court
  - (D) Innocent until proven guilty in court

## Grammar

### *Combining Independent Clauses with Conjunctions*

| Combining Independent Clauses with Conjunctions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Examples:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>A <b>conjunction</b> may be used to connect two independent clauses.</p> <p><b>Punctuation:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Usually a comma immediately precedes the conjunction.</li> <li>Sometimes in short sentences the comma is omitted.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> In addition to <b>and</b>, <b>but</b>, <b>or</b>, and <b>nor</b>, other conjunctions are used to connect two independent clauses:</p> <p><b>so</b> (meaning therefore, as a result)</p> <p><b>for</b> (meaning because)</p> <p><b>yet</b> (meaning but, nevertheless)</p> <p>A comma almost always precedes <b>so</b>, <b>for</b>, and <b>yet</b> when they are used as conjunctions, as in the above examples.</p> <p>A period, not a comma, is used to separate two independent clauses.</p> | <p>It was raining hard. A strange man was running down the street.<br/>It was raining hard, <b>and</b> a strange man was running down the street.</p> <p>It was raining hard, <b>and</b> a strange man was running down the street.</p> <p>It was raining hard <b>and</b> a strange man was running down the street.</p> <p>He was convicted of robbery, <b>so</b> he was imprisoned.</p> <p>The man was arrested by the police, <b>for</b> he was the prime suspect.</p> <p>He hadn't committed a crime, <b>yet</b> he was imprisoned.</p> <p>It was raining hard, a strange man was walking down the street. (incorrect)<br/>It was raining hard. A strange man was walking down the street. (correct)</p> |

### Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct answer to complete the following sentences.

- Ahmad is in serious legal trouble, \_\_\_\_\_ he had no car insurance at the time of the accident. (and, but, for)
- The suspect tried to escape, \_\_\_\_\_ the police caught him. (so, and, but)
- The police didn't have enough evidence against him, \_\_\_\_\_ they had to let him go. (yet, so, but)
- He didn't have a criminal background, \_\_\_\_\_ the police suspected him of carrying out the bomb attack. (yet, so, or)

5. The police officer arrested the suspect, \_\_\_\_\_ he warned him of his right to remain silent and the right to an attorney. (and, but, or)
6. The prosecutor dropped the charges against the old man, \_\_\_\_\_ he didn't have enough evidence to convict him. (so, yet, for)
7. You have nothing to fear, \_\_\_\_\_ you haven't done anything wrong. (but, for, yet)
8. Justice Ahmad issued an arrest warrant for the accused, \_\_\_\_\_ the police arrested him. (so, yet, nor)
9. He struggled with his attacker, \_\_\_\_\_ knocked him out by hitting his head on the wall. (and, or, so)
10. The police should do everything to catch the serial killer, \_\_\_\_\_ he will murder someone else soon. (and, or, yet)

## Chapter Fifteen

### Proceedings before Trial

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word                 | Meaning             | #  | Word            | Meaning          |
|---|----------------------|---------------------|----|-----------------|------------------|
| 1 | Trial (n)            | محاکمه              | 10 | The accused (n) | متهم             |
| 2 | To renew (v)         | تجدید کردن          | 11 | Defendant (n)   | مدعی علیه، مدافع |
| 3 | Guilty (adj)         | مجرم، گناهکار       | 12 | Punishment (n)  | مجازات           |
| 4 | Lastly (adv)         | بلاخره              | 13 | Torture (n)     | شکنجه            |
| 5 | Arrest (n)           | توقیف               | 14 | Testimony (n)   | گواهی، شهادت     |
| 6 | Impartial (adj)      | بی طرف، منصفانه     | 15 | Confession (n)  | اقرار            |
| 7 | To favor someone (v) | طرفداری کسی را کردن | 16 | To obtain (v)   | بدست آوردن       |
| 8 | Defense attorney (n) | وکیل مدافع          | 17 | Invalid (adj)   | بی اعتبار، باطل  |
| 9 | Evidence (n)         | گواه، مدرک          | 18 | Voluntary (adj) | ارادی، اختیاری   |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The kidnappers **renewed** their threats and set a new deadline.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. If found **guilty**, she will be faced with the death sentence.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Two **arrests** were made, but the men were later released without charge.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. A trial must be fair and **impartial**. In other words, the judge must not support one side of the case more than the other.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. She always felt that her parents **avored** her brother. For example, her parents always bought good things for her brother but they sometimes forgot to buy her birthday gifts.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The police have found no **evidence** of a terrorist link with the murder.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The **defendant** was acquitted of all three charges of murder.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. It is claimed that the officers **tortured** several men to death in a city police station.

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. He made a full **confession** to the police. He admitted committing the rape and murder.

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. Some doubts have been expressed about his **testimony**. It looks as if he has made up the story himself.

- a. a person in a law case who is accused of having done something illegal
- b. not supporting any of the sides involved in an argument
- c. to begin doing something again
- d. taking into custody
- e. the act of causing great physical or mental pain in order to persuade someone to do something or to give information
- f. responsible for breaking a law
- g. spoken or written statements that something is true, especially those given in a court of law
- h. one or more reasons for believing that something is or is not true
- i. when one admits that they have done something wrong or illegal
- j. to give an advantage to someone or something, in an unfair way



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of the proceedings before a trial and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is stated about confession?
2. What will happen if a defendant cannot afford a defense attorney?
3. What does the right to silence mean?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. For how long can the Primary Court renew the detention of an accused?
  - (A) Six months
  - (B) One month
  - (C) Two months
  - (D) Both (B) and (C)





2. Can a confession be obtained by torture and be used in a trial against the defendant?
  - (A) Sometimes, when the defendant is accused of felony
  - (B) No, it is invalid
  - (C) Yes, if it is deemed necessary
  - (D) Yes, when it involves a foreign national
3. What does '**impartial trial**' mean?
  - (A) A trial where no one is unfairly supported
  - (B) A trial where the judge favors the defendant
  - (C) A trial where the judge hates the defendant and wants to take revenge
  - (D) A trial where the judge discriminates against the defendant on the basis of religion, ethnicity, or race
4. What does the '**right to translation**' refer to?
  - (A) A defendant has the right to speak in his own language
  - (B) The trial must be done either in Pashto or Dari
  - (C) The defendant has the right to understand the material and documents related to the case through an interpreter or translator
  - (D) Both (A) and (C)



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

The proceedings before a trial are part of the legal process of a case from the time of arrest until trial. Once an accused person is detained for committing a crime, he or she is referred to the Primary Court. The Primary Court may renew the detention for two months. Then, the Appeals Court can **extend** detention for another two months if necessary. Lastly, during the trial, the Supreme Court has the right to extend the detention time for another five months. However, if the detention time runs out before the court rules out the case, the accused should be released. During all this time—from the moment of arrest until proven guilty – the accused is considered innocent.

The police, prosecutor, and the court are obliged to give the defendant or accused clear information about his or her right to be silent and the right to have a defense attorney, the right be present during an **inspection**, the rules for identifying criminals by a lineup, and the trial upon arrest and before interrogation. Confession to a crime must be voluntary; the accused must be of a sound state of mind, and the confession must take place before an authorized court. Criminal evidence can be used to make the criminal admit to a crime. However, criminal evidence gathered by breaking provisions of standing laws are invalid, and cannot be used against the accused in a trial.



An accused has the right to remain silent. **That** means that the police cannot force the accused to talk using torture. No person, even with the intention of discovering the truth, can torture or order the torture of another person. The **interrogator** who has administered the torture has violated the human rights and the law of Afghanistan. Any statement, testimony, or confession obtained from a person by using torture is invalid.

According to the constitution, all Afghan citizens have equal rights and duties before the law. Thus, an accused entitled to a just, impartial, authorized, and independent trial. For example, the court will not favor someone because he is from the north of the country or he is the son of a minister. Every person has the right to have a defense attorney upon arrest or at any time during the trial to help prove his or her innocence. In criminal cases, the government will appoint a defense attorney for individuals who cannot afford **one**. If parties involved in a case do not know the language in which the trial is conducted, they have the right to understand the material and documents related to the case through an interpreter/translator and the right to speak in their mother language in the court.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, what happens after an accused person is detained for committing a crime?  
(A) He/She is considered guilty  
(B) He/She is referred to the Appeals Court  
(C) He/She is considered not innocent  
(D) He/She is referred to the Primary Court
2. In paragraph one, what does the phrase "**he or she**" refer to?  
(A) Detained  
(B) An accused person  
(C) Accused  
(D) None of the above are true
3. In paragraph one, the word **extend** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Offer  
(B) Lengthen  
(C) Widen  
(D) Shorten
4. In paragraph two, the word **inspection** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Examination  
(B) Lining up  
(C) Clarification  
(D) Control



5. In paragraph three, what does the word **that** refer to?
  - (A) An accused
  - (B) Police
  - (C) Torture
  - (D) The right to silence
6. In paragraph three, what can be inferred about torture?
  - (A) It is not allowed at all
  - (B) It can be only used to obtain confession
  - (C) It can only be used during a trial
  - (D) It is sometimes necessary to obtain confession
7. In paragraph three, it is stated that confession is
  - (A) Mandatory
  - (B) Involuntary
  - (C) Voluntary
  - (D) Both (A) and (C)
8. In paragraph 3, the word **interrogator** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) A person who helps a victim
  - (B) A person who commits a crime
  - (C) A person who questions a criminal in order to obtain information
  - (D) A person who helps a criminal escape the justice
9. In paragraph four, what does the word **one** refer to?
  - (A) A translator
  - (B) An individual
  - (C) A defense attorney
  - (D) Government
10. In paragraph four, what is stated about the right to have a defense attorney?
  - (A) Every person has the right to have a defense attorney
  - (B) Only people who can afford it have the right to a defense attorney
  - (C) A defense attorney for people who cannot afford it should be provided by the government
  - (D) Both (A) and (C)

## Grammar

### The Verb "To Be"

| The Verb "To Be"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                        | Examples:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>The <b>"to be" verb</b> is used to say something about the state of a person or thing, to show a permanent or temporary quality or the state of being.</p> <p>A sentence with <b>be</b> as the main verb has three basic patterns:</p> <p><b>be</b> + a noun</p> <p><b>be</b> + an adjective</p> <p><b>be</b> + a prepositional phrase</p> <p><b>Be</b> is also used as an auxiliary verb in progressive verb tenses and in the passive.</p> |                                                        | <p>She <b>is</b> my attorney.</p> <p>Ahmad <b>is</b> a <b>lawyer</b>.</p> <p>The prosecutor <b>is happy</b> about the verdict.</p> <p>The judge <b>is in the court</b>.</p> <p>The judge is writing a letter now.</p> <p><b>is</b> = auxiliary</p> <p><b>writing</b> = main verb</p> |                                                                           |
| Tense Forms of BE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | SIMPLE PRESENT                                         | SIMPLE PAST                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | PRESENT PERFECT                                                           |
| SINGULAR                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | I <b>am</b><br>you <b>are</b><br>he, she, it <b>is</b> | I <b>was</b><br>you <b>were</b><br>he, she, it <b>was</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | I <b>have been</b><br>you <b>have been</b><br>he, she, it <b>has been</b> |
| PLURAL                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | we, you, they <b>are</b>                               | we, you, they <b>were</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | we, you, they <b>have been</b>                                            |
| <p><b>Linking Verbs:</b> Other verbs like <b>be</b> that may be followed immediately by an adjective are called linking verbs. An adjective following a linking verb describes the subject of a sentence.</p> <p>Common verbs that may be followed by an adjective:</p> <p><b>Feel, look, smell, sound, taste, appear, seem, become</b> (and <b>get, turn, grow</b> when they mean "become")</p>                                                |                                                        | <p>The judge <b>became</b> happy.</p> <p>The defendant <b>looked</b> tired.</p> <p>The prosecutor <b>felt</b> happy.</p>                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                           |

## Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct to be verbs to complete the following sentences.

1. He has \_\_\_\_\_ in prison for over five years. (is, was, been)
2. The police \_\_\_\_\_ becoming increasingly suspicious of his motives. (were, be, am)

3. \_\_\_\_\_ you accusing me of stealing? (is, was, are)
4. It \_\_\_\_\_ claimed that the officers tortured a man to death in a city police station. (am, is, be)
5. The defendant in a law case is a person who \_\_\_\_\_ accused of having done something illegal. (been, being, is)
6. They \_\_\_\_\_ being tried for murder. (is, are, be)
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ charged with two counts of robbery and one count of burglary. (was, were, be)
8. A judge \_\_\_\_\_ kidnapped last week. (is, was, been)
9. The three men accused of rape \_\_\_\_\_ interrogated by the police. (was, were, been)
10. A confession obtained under torture cannot \_\_\_\_\_ used in a court of law as evidence. (been, was, be)

## Chapter Sixteen

### The Trial

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word              | Meaning        | #  | Word           | Meaning          |
|---|-------------------|----------------|----|----------------|------------------|
| 1 | Investigation (n) | تحقیق          | 10 | Judge (n)      | قاضی             |
| 2 | Competent (adj)   | با صلاحیت      | 11 | Charge (n)     | اتهام            |
| 3 | Entitled (adj)    | مستحق          | 12 | Response (n)   | پاسخ             |
| 4 | Verdict (n)       | قضاوت          | 13 | Verbally (adv) | طور شفاهی، لفظاً |
| 5 | Ruling (n)        | تصمیم          | 14 | Written (adj)  | کتبی             |
| 6 | To confirm (v)    | تائید کردن     | 15 | Chamber (n)    | اتاق             |
| 7 | Secrecy (n)       | رازداری، اختفا | 16 | Case (n)       | قضیه             |
| 8 | Chairperson (n)   | رئیس           | 17 | Court (n)      | محکمه، دادگاه    |
| 9 | Clerk (n)         | منشی، محرر     | 18 | To state (v)   | بیان کردن        |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The three suspects are under **investigation**. The police believe they were involved in the abduction, rape, and murder of a sixteen-year-old girl.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The jury reached a unanimous **verdict** of not guilty. The defendant will be released on August 20.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The court has made a final **ruling** on the case that the companies acted illegally.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. I've accepted the job over the phone, but I haven't **confirmed** in writing yet.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. There has been strong criticism of the **secrecy** surrounding the negotiations. People want to know what is going on.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. She is **charged** with murdering her husband. But she claims she is innocent.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. **Responses** to our advertisement have been disappointing. We have had only 2 percent increase in sales.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Please write us with any complaints or suggestions that you may have. Only your **written** complaints and suggestions will be reviewed.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Meetings of the council are held in the council **chamber** in the west wing of the building.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Union members **stated** that they were unhappy with the proposal.
- a. an opinion or decision made after judging the facts that are given, usually in a trial
  - b. to exam a crime, problem, statement, etc.
  - c. to make an arrangement or meeting certain, often by telephone or writing
  - d. to say or write something
  - e. to make a formal statement saying that someone is accused of a crime
  - f. a decision made officially
  - g. in writing
  - h. kept secret
  - i. an answer or reaction
  - j. a room used for a special or official purpose



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of trials and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is a trial?
2. What are the three phases of a trial in Afghanistan?
3. What are the procedures of a trial?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. What is the highest judicial organ in Afghanistan?  
(A) The legislative branch  
(B) The Primary Court



- (C) The Appeals Court
  - (D) The Supreme Court
2. What will happen if either the defendant or the prosecutor appeals against a case to the Supreme Court?
- (A) The Supreme Court will reject it
  - (B) The Supreme Court will either confirm the rulings of the Appeals Court or cancel it and rule out
  - (C) The Supreme Court should accept the decision of the Appeals Court
  - (D) The Supreme Court will ask the president about the case
3. Who can attend trials?
- (A) Only the people who work for the government
  - (B) Only the family of the defendant
  - (C) Everyone
  - (D) No one
4. What will happen after the chairperson officially starts the trial?
- (A) The defendant states his response to the charges brought against him
  - (B) The defense attorney states his defense
  - (C) The witnesses come to testify
  - (D) The prosecutor reads the charges against the defendant



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

A trial is a legal proceeding of a case between a defendant and prosecutor before a **competent** court. Trials are held within the Afghan judicial system, which is independent body acting independently of the executive and legislative branches. The judicial branch consists of Primary Courts, Courts of Appeals, and the Supreme Court. The Supreme Court is the highest judicial body in the Islamic Republic of Afghanistan.

A trial can go through three phases in Afghanistan. First, a person accused of a crime is tried in the primary court. If either the prosecutor or defendant does not agree with the verdict, he or she can appeal the decision to the Appeals Court, within a certain time limit. If the Appeals Court disagrees with the primary court verdict, another trial will take place. Again, if either the defendant or the prosecutor does not agree with the decision made at the Appeals Court, due to some specified circumstances, the case will be taken to the Supreme Court. The Supreme Court either confirms the ruling of Appeals Court or refers **it** back to the Appeals Court for reconsideration. The ruling made by the Supreme Court is **final**.





The court should announce the start date of trial and inform the accused **accordingly** immediately upon receiving the case. In the courts of Afghanistan, trials are open and everyone is entitled to attend trials within the limits of law. However, in special situations, such as when the law requires a closed trial or when the secrecy of a trial is deemed necessary, the court can conduct the trial behind closed doors. For all trials – open or closed – the announcement of the court decision should be available in all instances. For example, Ahmad has committed a crime and now he is being tried at the court. Anyone interested in his case can attend the trial. The court can decide to try Ahmad behind closed doors, but the decision of the court should be announced publicly.

**Typically**, a trial session includes a chairperson, member judges, a prosecutor, a defendant, clerk and sometimes an administrator. The chairperson starts the trial with a prayer in the name of God. Then, the prosecutor reads the charges against the defendant aloud. Next, the chairperson asks the defendant for his or her response. The defendant states his or her response, which can be said verbally or in writing. At this point, the defense attorney can present his defense. The chairperson of the trial sends the defendant out of the chamber and the judicial officers start discussions. The prosecutor remains in the chamber but does not have the right to state his opinions. Finally, the chairperson reads aloud the verdict.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, the word **competent** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Expert
  - (B) Incompetent
  - (C) Qualified
  - (D) Inexperienced
2. In paragraph two, it is stated that the first phase of a trial is held in
  - (A) The Supreme Court
  - (B) The Appeals Court
  - (C) the Primary Court
  - (D) The Parliament
3. What does the Supreme Court do with a case appealed to it?
  - (A) Holds another trial
  - (B) Refers the case to the Primary Court
  - (C) Decides over the case in no more than 2 months' time
  - (D) Either confirms the ruling or refers it back to the Appeals Court



4. What does the word **it** refer to?  
(A) The Appeals Court  
(B) Ruling  
(C) Case  
(D) Reconsideration
5. It can be inferred from the sentence "**The ruling made by the Supreme Court is final**" that  
(A) The ruling of the Supreme Court can be appealed  
(B) The ruling of the Supreme Court cannot be appealed  
(C) The ruling of the Supreme Court can be appealed as many times as wanted  
(D) None of the above
6. In paragraph two, the word **final** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Beginning  
(B) Last  
(C) Preparation  
(D) Important
7. In paragraph three, the word **accordingly** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Too  
(B) Also  
(C) In a way that is right for the situation  
(D) As instructed by the prosecutor
8. In paragraph four, the word **typically** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Always  
(B) Normally  
(C) According to the law  
(D) Based on some reasons
9. How is a trial started?  
(A) The chairperson of the trial starts the trial in the name of God  
(B) The prosecutor starts the trial by reading the charges against the defendant  
(C) The defense attorney starts the trial by saying his defense  
(D) The defendant stands up and defends himself against the charges
10. In paragraph four, what happens after the chairperson of the trial officially opens the trial?  
(A) The defendant defends himself  
(B) The defense attorney says his defense  
(C) The prosecutor reads the charges against the defendant  
(D) The witness testifies against the defendant

## Grammar

### Personal Pronouns

| Personal Pronouns                                                                                                                      | Examples                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|--------|----------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| A pronoun is a word used in place of a noun. It refers to a noun. The noun it refers to is called the antecedent.                      | I read the <b>book</b> . <b>It</b> was good. (The pronoun "it" refers to the antecedent noun "book.")                                                                                                                                                                                                 |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>Subject Pronouns:</b> A subject pronoun is a word used in place of a noun and is used as the subject of a verb to avoid repetition. | <table> <tr> <th>SINGULAR</th><th>PLURAL</th></tr> <tr> <td><b>I</b></td><td><b>we</b></td></tr> <tr> <td><b>you</b></td><td><b>you</b></td></tr> <tr> <td><b>she, he, it</b></td><td><b>they</b></td></tr> </table> <p>The <b>woman</b> was abused by her husband. <b>She</b> filed for divorce.</p> | SINGULAR | PLURAL | <b>I</b>       | <b>we</b>        | <b>you</b>       | <b>you</b>        | <b>she, he, it</b>        | <b>they</b>        |
| SINGULAR                                                                                                                               | PLURAL                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>I</b>                                                                                                                               | <b>we</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>you</b>                                                                                                                             | <b>you</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>she, he, it</b>                                                                                                                     | <b>they</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>Object Pronouns:</b> An object pronoun is a word used in place of a noun used as the object of a verb to avoid repetition.          | <table> <tr> <th>SINGULAR</th><th>PLURAL</th></tr> <tr> <td><b>me</b></td><td><b>us</b></td></tr> <tr> <td><b>you</b></td><td><b>you</b></td></tr> <tr> <td><b>her, him, it</b></td><td><b>them</b></td></tr> </table> <p>The rebels abducted a <b>journalist</b> and then killed <b>him</b>.</p>     | SINGULAR | PLURAL | <b>me</b>      | <b>us</b>        | <b>you</b>       | <b>you</b>        | <b>her, him, it</b>       | <b>them</b>        |
| SINGULAR                                                                                                                               | PLURAL                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>me</b>                                                                                                                              | <b>us</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>you</b>                                                                                                                             | <b>you</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>her, him, it</b>                                                                                                                    | <b>them</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>Possessive Pronouns:</b> Possessive pronouns are not followed immediately by a noun; they stand alone.                              | <table> <tr> <th>SINGULAR</th><th>PLURAL</th></tr> <tr> <td><b>mine</b></td><td><b>ours</b></td></tr> <tr> <td><b>yours</b></td><td><b>yours</b></td></tr> <tr> <td><b>hers, his</b></td><td><b>theirs</b></td></tr> </table> <p>That car is <b>mine</b>. <b>Yours</b> is stolen.</p>                 | SINGULAR | PLURAL | <b>mine</b>    | <b>ours</b>      | <b>yours</b>     | <b>yours</b>      | <b>hers, his</b>          | <b>theirs</b>      |
| SINGULAR                                                                                                                               | PLURAL                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>mine</b>                                                                                                                            | <b>ours</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>yours</b>                                                                                                                           | <b>yours</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>hers, his</b>                                                                                                                       | <b>theirs</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>Possessive Adjectives:</b> Possessive adjectives are followed immediately by a noun; they do not stand alone.                       | <table> <tr> <th>SINGULAR</th><th>PLURAL</th></tr> <tr> <td><b>my</b> name</td><td><b>our</b> names</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>your</b> name</td><td><b>your</b> names</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>her, his, its</b> name</td><td><b>their</b> names</td></tr> </table> <p><b>My</b> car was stolen.</p>         | SINGULAR | PLURAL | <b>my</b> name | <b>our</b> names | <b>your</b> name | <b>your</b> names | <b>her, his, its</b> name | <b>their</b> names |
| SINGULAR                                                                                                                               | PLURAL                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>my</b> name                                                                                                                         | <b>our</b> names                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>your</b> name                                                                                                                       | <b>your</b> names                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |
| <b>her, his, its</b> name                                                                                                              | <b>their</b> names                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |          |        |                |                  |                  |                   |                           |                    |

## Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct words to complete the following sentences.

- Three men were caught last week and \_\_\_\_\_ are being tried for murder now. (them, theirs, they)
- Because of security implications, \_\_\_\_\_ was tried in secret. (she, hers, her)
- An old man was charged with robbery, but \_\_\_\_\_ was acquitted of the charge in court last week. (his, he's, he)
- Anyone who drives \_\_\_\_\_ car at more than 100 miles per an hour is breaking the traffic law. (he, his, he's)

5. The inquiry found that \_\_\_\_\_ had been subjected to unfair treatment. (her, hers, they)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ going on trial for fraud. (Her, She's, Hers)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ son was found dead in a torture chamber made by the rebels. (His, He's, Him)
8. The courts have ruled \_\_\_\_\_ action illegal. (he, him, his)
9. His punishment was as severe as \_\_\_\_\_. (my, mine, I)
10. Drugs are one of the greatest threats in \_\_\_\_\_ society. (ours, we, our)

## Chapter Seventeen

### Sentencing Option

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word                     | Meaning      | #  | Word                     | Meaning        |
|---|--------------------------|--------------|----|--------------------------|----------------|
| 1 | Plea (n)                 | مدافعه       | 10 | Principal punishment (n) | جزاهای اصلی    |
| 2 | To impose (v)            | وضع کردن     | 11 | Compensation (n)         | جبران          |
| 3 | Sentence (n)             | حکم، قضاوت   | 12 | In question              | مورد بحث       |
| 4 | Penal Code (n)           | قانون جزایی  | 13 | To confiscate (v)        | ضبط کردن       |
| 5 | Consequential punishment | جزاهایی تبعی | 14 | Deprivation (n)          | محرومیت        |
| 6 | Guilt                    | گناه، جرم    | 15 | Consequently (adv)       | در نتیجه       |
| 7 | On purpose (adj)         | عمدی، قصدی   | 16 | Jurisprudence (n)        | فقه، حقوق الهی |
| 8 | To execute (v)           | اعدام کردن   | 17 | For instance (n)         | بطور مثال      |
| 9 | To stone to death (v)    | سنگسار کردن  | 18 | To enact (v)             | وضع کردن قانون |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Very high taxes have recently been **imposed** on cigarettes. As a result, the cost of cigarettes has gone up.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. He got a heavy **sentence** of 20 years in jail.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Both suspects admitted their **guilt** to the police.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. I didn't break it **on purpose**: it was an accident.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The man, who was accused of adultery, was **stoned** to death by fanatics.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. She received \$40,000 in **compensation** for a lost eye.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. His passport was **confiscated** by the police to prevent him from leaving the country.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Although Afghanistan has signed several international treaties, the law inside Afghanistan is based on Hanafi **jurisprudence**.

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. The rate of crime has been cut in half. **For instance**, no case of robbery has been reported in the last three months.

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. Several laws have been **enacted** to fight corruption in the government.

- a. the fact of having committed a crime
- b. the study of law and the principles on which law is based
- c. a punishment given by a judge to a person or organization after they have been found guilty of a crime
- d. intentionally
- e. to officially enforce a rule, tax, punishment, etc.
- f. for example
- g. money that is paid to someone in exchange for something that has been lost or damaged
- h. to put something into action, in many cases to turn something into a law
- i. to kill someone by throwing stones at them
- j. to seize a possession away from someone, usually as a punishment and often for a limited period



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of sentencing options and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What will happen if there is no provision of law for a crime in the constitution or the Penal Code?
2. What are the two main punishments in Afghanistan?
3. What are the principle punishments in Afghanistan, as indicated in the penal code?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. What is "**qesas**"?
  - (A) Life imprisonment
  - (B) Up to 20 years in jail



- (C) Sentencing the same punishment the criminal has inflicted on another
  - (D) Death sentence
2. What is the "**had**" for adultery between a married man and a married woman?
    - (A) Stoning to death for both
    - (B) Stoning to death for the man and life imprisonment for the woman
    - (C) Stoning to death for the woman and life imprisonment for the man
    - (D) Stoning to death for the man and 100 lashes for the woman
  3. What is "**ta'azir**"?
    - (A) Crimes that are punishable by administering 100 lashes
    - (B) Crimes that are punishable by 10 years in jail
    - (C) Crimes whose punishments are not specified in Sharia
    - (D) Crimes that are not punishable under Sharia
  4. What is the duration of a medium-term imprisonment?
    - (A) Not less than two years and no more than ten years
    - (B) Not less than one year and no more than five years
    - (C) Not less than three months and no more than one year
    - (D) Not less than one month and no more than six months



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

Once a defendant's guilt has been determined – either by a judge's guilty **verdict** or by the entry of a guilty plea – the defendant must be sentenced. Generally, the trial judge imposes the sentence, which must be within the statutory limits set by the legislature for the crime in question. In Afghanistan, sentencing is based on the Penal Code and the constitution. However, for cases where there is no provision in the constitution and other official laws, the court's decisions will be in accord with Hanafi jurisprudence, within the limits of the constitution.

Generally, there are two forms of punishment in Afghanistan. The first is based on Sharia, or more specifically, on Hanafi jurisprudence. It includes "qesas," "hudud," and "ta'azirat." "Qesas" means sentencing the criminal to the same punishment as he or she inflicted on another. For instance, if a person kills another person on purpose, the "qesas" will be to execute the murderer. "Hudud" is punishment for crimes whose punishments are specified under Sharia. For example, the "had" for adultery between a married man and a married woman is stoning to death for both the man and the woman. Finally, "Ta'azir" is defined as a "punishment whose form or quantity has not been determined by Sharia and is left to the decision of the judge," such as prison, cash fines, and lashings. The number of lashings should be less than in "had." The



Penal Code of Afghanistan, however, **maintains** that if the conditions for the above are not fulfilled, or the case of "had," "qesas," or "ta'azir" is dropped, the provisions of the Penal Code and other enacted laws will be used.

The second one is based on the Penal Code and other standing laws. The **principal** punishments in the Afghan Penal Code include execution, continued imprisonment, long prison sentences, medium prison sentences, short prison sentences, and cash fines. The duration of continued prison sentence is sixteen to twenty years. The duration of long prison sentence cannot be less than five years and more than fifteen years and the duration of medium prison term is not less than one year and no more than five years. Additionally, a short prison term is not less than 24 hours and no more than one year.

In addition to the above principal punishments, there are **consequential** punishments and complementary punishments, such as confiscation of property, compensation, deprivation of certain rights and privileges, etc. For instance, a person who is sentenced to continued or long imprisonment of more than ten years will also be deprived of state employment as consequential punishment. Another example, Ahmad stole 200,000 Afghanis' worth of goods from a businessman. He sold the goods and then bought a car with the money. The police caught him after three months and put him in prison. He was found guilty and was sentenced to imprisonment. The judge also ordered him to pay the businessman for the goods. Ahmad didn't have any money, but he still had the car that was worth 200,000 Afghanis. Ahmad's car was confiscated and **it** was given to the businessman as complementary punishment.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, the word **verdict** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) An opinion expressed by a police officer
  - (B) A statement released by a court
  - (C) A decision made at the end of a trial
  - (D) Outcome of an event
2. In paragraph one, it is implied that a person found guilty of a crime must be
  - (A) Released
  - (B) Sentenced to death
  - (C) Sentenced
  - (D) Tried
3. In paragraph two, what does the word **it** refer to?
  - (A) Sharia
  - (B) Hanafi jurisprudence





- (C) The first  
(D) Qesas
4. What is "had"?
- (A) A crime that is not specified in the penal code
  - (B) A crime whose punishment is specified in the penal code
  - (C) A crime whose punishment is specified in Sharia
  - (D) All of the above are true
5. In paragraph two, the word **maintains** is closest in meaning to
- (A) Ratify
  - (B) Express
  - (C) Support
  - (D) Prepare
6. In paragraph two, it is implied that if the Sharia law requirements are not fulfilled
- (A) The judge will make new laws
  - (B) The judge will refer to the Koran
  - (C) The penal code and other standing laws will be used
  - (D) The accused will be released
7. In paragraph three, the word **principal** is closest in meaning to
- (A) Main
  - (B) The most important
  - (C) The worst
  - (D) First
8. In paragraph three, what is the duration for a long prison sentence?
- (A) From one to five years
  - (B) From 16 to 20 years
  - (C) From 24 hours to three months
  - (D) From five to 15 years
9. In paragraph four, the word **consequential** is closest in meaning to
- (A) Something that is useful
  - (B) Additional things added
  - (C) Happening as a result of something
  - (D) A harsher punishment
10. What does the word **it** refer to in paragraph four?
- (A) Businessman
  - (B) Goods
  - (C) Ahmed's house
  - (D) Ahmad

## Grammar

Using Paired Conjunctions: *both ... and, not only ... but also, either... or and neither ... nor*

| Using Paired Conjunctions:<br><b>both ... and, not only ... but also,<br/>either... or, neither ... nor</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Examples:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>Conjunction</b> is a word such as "<b>and</b>," "<b>but</b>," "<b>while</b>" or "<b>although</b>" that connects words, phrases, and clauses in a sentence. Words such as <b>both ...and; not only ... but also; either... or; neither ... nor</b> are called paired conjunctions or correlative conjunctions since they are always used in pairs.</p> <p>Two subjects connected by <b>both ... and</b> take a plural verb.</p> <p>When two subjects are connected by <b>not only ... but also, either ... or, neither ... nor</b>, the subject that is closer to the verb determines whether the verb is singular or plural.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The following same grammatical form should follow each of the pairs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>both</b> + noun + <b>and</b> + noun</li><li>• <b>not only</b> + verb + <b>but also</b> + verb</li><li>• <b>either</b> + noun + <b>or</b> + noun</li><li>• <b>neither</b> + adjective + <b>nor</b> + adjective</li></ul> | <p><b>Either</b> the woman <b>or</b> the man will be sentenced to death.</p> <p><b>Both</b> the man <b>and</b> the woman <b>were</b> charged with murdering the businessman.</p> <p><b>Neither</b> his mother <b>nor</b> his father <b>was</b> present at the trial.<br/><b>Not only</b> her sister <b>but also</b> her brothers were involved in the murder.</p> <p><b>Both</b> the husband <b>and</b> the wife were sentenced to short-term imprisonment.<br/>The man did <b>not only</b> rape <b>but also</b> murdered the woman.</p> <p><b>Either</b> the man <b>or</b> his wife shoplifted the clothes from the clothes store.</p> <p>The convicted murderer looked <b>neither</b> sad <b>nor</b> happy.</p> |

## Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs to complete the following sentences.

1. Either the president or the vice president \_\_\_\_\_ to the meeting today.  
(come, comes)
2. Not only the man but also his accomplice \_\_\_\_\_ convicted of kidnapping. (was, were)

3. Both the minister and his deputy \_\_\_\_\_ acquitted of bribery at the court yesterday. (was, were)
4. The president's spokesperson neither confirmed nor \_\_\_\_\_ the scandalous story. (denies, denied)
5. He will \_\_\_\_\_ either convicted or acquitted. (is, be)
6. Neither the man nor the woman \_\_\_\_\_ involvement in the robbery. (deny, denies)
7. Both the old man and his friend \_\_\_\_\_ sentenced to five years in prison and fined 50,000 Afghanis for drug-trafficking. (were, was)
8. Not only his sister but also his brother \_\_\_\_\_ accused of breaching the law. (was, were)
9. He didn't only rob the bank but also \_\_\_\_\_ a bank teller. (murder, murdered)
10. He will either receive a short-term imprisonment or \_\_\_\_\_. (fines, will be fined)

## Unit Five:

### Common Crimes in Afghanistan

## Chapter Eighteen

### Homicide

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word              | Meaning       | #  | Word               | Meaning                |
|---|-------------------|---------------|----|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1 | Homicide (n)      | قتل           | 10 | Condition (n)      | شرط                    |
| 2 | Human being (n)   | انسان         | 11 | Gambling (n)       | قمار                   |
| 3 | Negligent (n)     | بی دقت        | 12 | Non-observance (n) | عدم ملاحظه، عدم رعایت  |
| 4 | Murder (n)        | قتل عمد       | 13 | Hard hat (n)       | کلاه سخت               |
| 5 | Malice (n)        | کینه          | 14 | Principle (n)      | اصل، قاعده کلی         |
| 6 | Premeditation (n) | قصد قبلی      | 15 | Intoxicant (n)     | مسکر، مستی آور         |
| 7 | Lethal (adj)      | مہلک، مرگ آور | 16 | Refusal (n)        | امتناع، رد             |
| 8 | Poison (n)        | زهر           | 17 | Despite (prep)     | با وجود، با اینکه      |
| 9 | Brutal (adj)      | بی رحم، وحشی  | 18 | To shoot (v)       | با گلولہ بہ قتل رساندن |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. He was convicted of **homicide**. The punishment for murder in Afghanistan is the death sentence.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The man was accused of **negligent** murder. He killed someone walking on the street with his car because he wasn't paying attention.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The three robbers were convicted of murdering the construction worker. Their fingerprints were found on the victim's **hard hat**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The murder was proven to be with **malice** and premeditated.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The police found guns, knives, and other **lethal** weapons in a car.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The police found a bottle of poison in the murderer's house. Police believed the criminal used the **poison** to kill people.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Under the **conditions** of the agreement, she must vacate the house on 12 July.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The government has closed all the gambling houses because some people have lost all their savings by **gambling**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Taking **intoxicants** while driving is illegal in many countries and the offender can be imprisoned and fined.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The accused claimed he was innocent and that he had **shot his father** accidentally.
- a. betting money, for example in a game
  - b. to kill a person by firing a gun
  - c. causing death; fatal
  - d. murder
  - e. a hat made of a strong substance which is worn by builders and other workers to protect their heads
  - f. an arrangement that must exist before something else can happen
  - g. a substance that can make people or animals ill or kill them if consumed
  - h. a substance such as alcohol that produces artificial feelings of pleasure or happiness in a person
  - i. when you do not take enough care or pay attention to someone or something
  - j. the wish to harm or upset other people



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of homicide and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is homicide?
2. What is intentional homicide?
3. What is unintentional homicide?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. What is the punishment for intentional homicide in Afghanistan?  
(A) Long imprisonment



- (B) Cash fine  
(C) Long imprisonment and a cash fine  
(D) Capital punishment
2. In which of the following cases will the murderer be sentenced to death?  
(A) When the act of murder is accomplished with no intention  
(B) When the act of murder is accomplished while the murderer was under the influence of drugs  
(C) When the act of murder is accomplished with no premeditation  
(D) When the act of murder is accomplished while raping the victim
3. In which of the following cases will the murderer not be sentenced to death?  
(A) When the act of murder is accomplished while robbing the victim  
(B) When the act of murder is accomplished while under the influence of alcohol  
(C) When the act of murder is accomplished while beating the victim with a metal bar  
(D) When the act of murder is accomplished with malice and premeditation
4. What is the punishment for an act of murder by mistake?  
(A) Capital punishment  
(B) Short imprisonment and a cash fine  
(C) Up to three years in jail and a cash fine of 36 thousand Afghanis  
(D) Up to two years in jail and a cash fine of 36 thousand Afghanis



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

Homicide, in criminal law, is the **act** of killing a human being either intentionally or unintentionally. For example, Ahmad wanted to kill Javed because Javed married the girl **he** loved. Ahmad planned the murder, bought a gun, and shot Javed dead when he was on his way home. Thus, Ahmad is guilty of intentional homicide. In Afghanistan, intentional homicide is considered a felony.

According to the Penal Code in Afghanistan, if a person commits a felony by killing another person intentionally, the murderer shall **be sentenced to death**. The death penalty applies if any of the following conditions exist in a homicide:

- When the act of murder is accomplished with malice and premeditation. (Malice means with intention to hurt and premeditation means planned before.)
- When the murder is accomplished by using lethal materials such as poison.



- When the act of murder is accomplished brutally, for example by beating someone to death.
- If the murdered victim is a family member of the murderer, such as the parents or grandparents.
- If the murdered victim is a public servant who is murdered while performing his or her duty or is murdered as a result of his or her duty.
- If the murderer kills more than one person.
- If the murder is followed by a second felony or misdemeanor crime.
- If the murder is committed as a result of another felony crime such as rape or a misdemeanor such as gambling.
- If a person, who is due to serve a long prison sentence, commits murder before serving the prison term.

On the other hand, the Afghan Penal Code does not **prescribe** capital punishment for homicide that is committed unintentionally. An act of murder by mistake or as a result of negligence, **carelessness**, or nonobservance is punishable by imprisonment for a period of up to three years and a cash fine of 36,000 Afghanis. Moreover, the offender shall be sentenced to medium prison term of not less than two years and shall be fined no more than 50,000 Afghanis on the following conditions:

- If a death occurs as a result of a serious violation of occupational or professional rules, such as not requiring construction workers to wear hard hats
- If a homicide occurs under influence of narcotics or intoxicants
- If a death occurs because of the refusal to assist during an accident, despite having the ability of doing so.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, the word **act** is closest in meaning to  
 (A) Performing in a play  
 (B) Doing something  
 (C) Pretending  
 (D) Taking part
2. In paragraph one, what does the word **he** refer to?  
 (A) Ahmad  
 (B) Javed  
 (C) Another man not mentioned in this reading  
 (D) Both (A) and (B)
3. In paragraph one, all of the following elements exist in Ahmad's case except  
 (A) Malice





- (B) Negligence
  - (C) Premeditation
  - (D) Intention
4. What will be Ahmad's punishment based on paragraph two?
- (A) Long imprisonment
  - (B) Continued imprisonment
  - (C) Death sentence
  - (D) Not less than 15 years in jail
5. In paragraph two, the phrase "**be sentenced to death**" means
- (A) To stone someone to death
  - (B) To murder someone
  - (C) To condemn someone to death as a form of punishment
  - (D) To shoot someone to death
6. Based on paragraph two, in which case is the death sentence applied?
- (A) When killing someone while driving
  - (B) When killing someone while committing robbery
  - (C) When killing someone with no premeditation
  - (D) When killing someone while under the influence of alcohol
7. In paragraph three, the word **prescribe** is closest in meaning to
- (A) Giving someone medicine
  - (B) Giving something as a rule
  - (C) Punishing someone
  - (D) Treating someone by giving them medicine
8. What is **capital punishment**?
- (A) Long imprisonment
  - (B) The death penalty
  - (C) Continued imprisonment
  - (D) Both (A) and (B)
9. In paragraph three, the word **carelessness** is closest in meaning to
- (A) Paying a lot of attention to something
  - (B) Not paying enough attention to something
  - (C) Being careful
  - (D) Being sober
10. Which of the following is an example of a violation of professional principles based on paragraph three?
- (A) Construction workers wearing hard hats
  - (B) Surgeons not using clean and sterilized knives
  - (C) Drivers wearing safety belts
  - (D) Keeping hazardous materials out of children's playground

### Homicide Case Summary

Mohammad Eqbal, resident of Logar province, was the main suspect in the murder of Eid Mohammad and Mohammad Naeem. He was wanted by the police and was

arrested on 17.09.1384 in Charkh district, Logar. His case was taken to the Primary Court after his interrogation. Eqlal was found guilty of murdering Eid Mohammad and Mohammad Naeem at trial. Based on articles 395 and 156 of the Penal Code, he was sentenced to death. The Appeals Court confirmed the ruling of the Primary Court after Eqlal appealed the verdict. The convict still didn't accept the ruling of the Appeals Court and his case was taken to the Supreme Court. The General Criminal Dewan of the Supreme Court confirmed the death sentence for Mohammad Eqlal. According to the law, the death sentence must be approved by the president before it can be executed.

### Questions:

1. What is this case summary about?
2. What is the sentence in this case?
3. Do you know a similar case to this one? If yes, please write it in the space provided below.

### Grammar

#### Regular and Irregular Verbs

| Regular and Irregular Verbs                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Examples                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>Verbs</b> can be regular or irregular.</p> <p>The past simple and past participle of <b>regular verbs</b> are formed by adding "d" or "ed" at the end of verbs:</p> <p>The past simple and past participle of <b>irregular verbs</b> are not formed in a regular way.</p> <p>We distinguish three types of irregular verbs:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verbs in which all three forms are the same</li> <li>2. Verbs in which two of the three forms are the same</li> <li>3. Verbs in which all three forms are different</li> </ol> | <p>Simple form – past simple – past participle</p> <p><b>kill + ed - killed - killed</b><br/> <b>murder + ed- murdered - murdered</b><br/> <b>waste + d - wasted - wasted</b></p><br><p><b>cut - cut - cut</b><br/> <b>sit - sat - sat</b><br/> <b>ring - rang - rung</b></p> |

### Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs to complete the following sentences.

1. Penalties for not paying taxes are \_\_\_\_\_ by law. (prescribe, prescribed, prescribed)
2. Several people were seriously \_\_\_\_\_ in the explosion. (hurt, hurted, hart)

3. Those responsible for these crimes must be brought to court and \_\_\_\_\_. (punish, punished, panish)
4. The murderer had \_\_\_\_\_ the gun from a local drug dealer. (buy, bought, buyed)
5. Four members of the family had been \_\_\_\_\_, but not fatally. (poison, poisoned, poison)
6. The murder victim had \_\_\_\_\_ a black dress. (worn, wear, wore)
7. The suspect was \_\_\_\_\_ during a police raid on the house. (catch, caught, catched)
8. He was found guilty and \_\_\_\_\_ later that year. (hang, hanged, hung)
9. She was \_\_\_\_\_ three times in the head. (shoot, shot, shooted)
10. The police said that murderer had \_\_\_\_\_ the victim on the head with an iron bar. (strike, struck, striked)

## Chapter Nineteen

### Kidnapping

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word             | Meaning           | #  | Word          | Meaning     |
|---|------------------|-------------------|----|---------------|-------------|
| 1 | Kidnapping (n)   | آدم ربایي، اختطاف | 9  | Guardian (n)  | قیم، ولی    |
| 2 | Offense (n)      | جرم               | 10 | Penalty (n)   | کیفر، جزا   |
| 3 | Fraud (n)        | تقلب، فریب        | 11 | Tutor (n)     | معلم سرخانه |
| 4 | Intimidation (n) | ارعاب             | 12 | Offender (n)  | متخلف       |
| 5 | Ransom (n)       | فدیه              | 13 | To abduct (v) | آدم دزدیدن  |
| 6 | Imprisonment (n) | حبس               | 14 | Gender (n)    | جنس         |
| 7 | Deliberate (adj) | عمدی              | 15 | To vary (v)   | فرق داشتن   |
| 8 | Foreign (adj)    | خارجی             |    |               |             |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The wife of a businessman was **kidnapped** from her home in Kabul but was released after two days.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The company director was **abducted** from his car by terrorists.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The **Penal Code** of 1976 regards kidnapping as a felony.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The samples **varied** in quality but were similar in color.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The old woman was charged with a **deliberate** plan to kill her granddaughter.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The child's parents or **guardians** must give their consent before she has the operation.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The **penalty** for some felonies is life imprisonment or death.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Discrimination on the basis of race, **gender**, age or disability is not allowed.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. They demanded a huge **ransom** for the return of the little girl whom they had kidnapped.

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. His work provided him with the opportunity for a lot of **foreign** travel.

- a. to take a person away illegally by force, usually in order to demand money in exchange for releasing them
- b. belonging or connected to a country which is not your own
- c. to force someone to go somewhere with you, often using threats or violence
- d. punishment for a crime
- e. a large sum of money which is demanded in exchange for someone who has been taken prisoner
- f. the system of legal punishment in a country
- g. the physical and social condition of being male or female
- h. to be different
- i. intentional or planned
- j. a person who has the legal right and responsibility of taking care of someone who cannot take care of themselves



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of kidnapping. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is the crime of kidnapping?
2. How does Afghanistan punish the act of kidnapping by organized criminal organizations?
3. What is the punishment for kidnapping a married woman?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. What is the punishment for kidnapping children?
  - (A) Cash fine of 60,000 Afghanis
  - (B) Short-term prison sentence
  - (C) Up to seven years in jail
  - (D) More than seven years in jail
2. What is the punishment for kidnapping a girl child?
  - (A) Long term prison sentence of more than ten years



- (B) Long term prison sentence of exceeding ten years
  - (C) Long term prison sentence of not exceeding ten years
  - (D) Maximum anticipated punishment
3. What is the punishment for kidnapping adults?
- (A) Short term prison sentence of not more than six months
  - (B) Long term prison sentence of exceeding ten years
  - (C) Medium term prison sentence of ranging from three to five years
  - (D) Medium term prison sentence of not exceeding three years
4. What is the punishment for kidnapping a woman 18 or above?
- (A) Long term prison sentence
  - (B) Short term prison sentence
  - (C) Medium term prison sentence
  - (D) None of the above



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

Kidnapping, in criminal law, is an offense involving taking away a person against his or her will, either by force, **fraud**, or intimidation. Kidnapping often involves asking for money or a ransom in return for releasing the **abducted** person. Kidnapping is seen as an act of terrorism by many countries in the world. According to the law in Afghanistan, kidnapping by organized criminal organizations is considered an act of crime against internal and external security and is subject to an open trial by the Court of Crimes Against National and Foreign Security.

According to the Penal Code of Afghanistan, kidnapping is regarded as a criminal act with varying prison sentences, based on the age, gender, and status of the person kidnapped. Under the Penal Code, the kidnapping of children is punishable by up to seven years in prison. If death or injuries occur as a result of the kidnapping, the punishment is increased and the offender can be charged with the crime of “**deliberate** murder.” If the kidnapped child is a girl, the punishment is a long term prison sentence, not exceeding 10 years. If the offender is a person that has influence or authority over the child victim – such as a **guardian** or tutor – the punishment is increased to a maximum of 10 years’ imprisonment. Kidnapping of adults is punishable by a medium-term prison sentence, ranging from three to five years. A maximum ten-year prison sentence also applies if the kidnapping is committed by a group of at least two people. If the victim is a woman 18 years of age or older, the punishment is a long term prison sentence. If the woman is married or if the offender commits adultery with her, the punishment is the maximum possible.





### Reading Comprehension Exercise

Read the following questions and circle the best answer.

1. In paragraph one, the word **fraud** means
  - (A) Power
  - (B) Deceit
  - (C) Money
  - (D) Consent
2. In which country is kidnapping considered a terrorist attack according to paragraph one?
  - (A) Pakistan
  - (B) England
  - (C) Canada
  - (D) Not mentioned in the text
3. In paragraph one, the word abducted is used. Another word for **abduct** is
  - (A) Kidnap
  - (B) Help
  - (C) Imprison
  - (D) Shelter
4. In paragraph one, all the following are stated except
  - (A) Kidnapping is sometimes accomplished with the use of force
  - (B) Kidnapping is the crime of taking a person away against his/her will
  - (C) Kidnapping is a crime
  - (D) Kidnapping always involves asking for a ransom
5. In paragraph two, the word **deliberate** is close in meaning with
  - (A) Choice
  - (B) Reluctant
  - (C) Sad
  - (D) Intentional
6. In paragraph two, what is the punishment for kidnapping a minor?
  - (A) A long-term prison sentence of not less than 10 years
  - (B) Up to seven years in jail if the victim is a boy
  - (C) A long-term prison sentence not exceeding ten years if the victim is a girl
  - (D) Both (B) and (C)
7. The word **guardian** in paragraph two means
  - (A) Teacher
  - (B) Classmate



- (C) A person who is not legally responsible for someone  
(D) A person who is legally responsible for someone
8. In paragraph two, all of the following are true except  
(A) Kidnapping of male minors is less serious than kidnapping male adults  
(B) Kidnapping of male adults is less serious than kidnapping female minors  
(C) Kidnapping female adults is more serious than kidnapping male adults  
(D) Kidnapping female minors is more serious than kidnapping male minors
9. In paragraph two, it can be inferred that the punishment for kidnapping a 25-year-old woman is  
(A) A short-term prison sentence  
(B) A med-term prison sentence  
(C) A long-term prison sentence  
(D) None of the above
10. In paragraph two, what is the punishment for kidnapping a married woman?  
(A) Long imprisonment not exceeding ten years in jail  
(B) The maximum anticipated punishment, only if adultery is committed with the victim  
(C) A long-term prison sentence  
(D) The maximum anticipated punishment

### Kidnapping Case Summary

Clementina Cantoni, an Italian aid worker working for CARE International, was abducted in May 2005 by an Afghan gang. The abductors asked for the release of four prisoners as a ransom to free Cantoni. Cantoni was released after 24 days with the kidnappers. It is not known whether the abductors' demands were met or a ransom was paid. However, the kidnappers were caught shortly afterwards. Temor Shah was recognized as the gang leader and Farhad and Assadullah the accomplices. Each was sentenced by the Primary Court to 20 years in jail for their involvement in kidnapping with possibility of appealing their sentence.

### Questions:

- What is this case summary about?
- What is the sentence in this case?
- Do you know a similar case to this one? If yes, please write it in the space provided below.

### Grammar

#### Suffix

| Suffix:                                                                                                                                                            | Examples:                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A <b>suffix</b> is a letter or group of letters added at the end of a word to make a new word. A suffix always changes the part of speech of the word added to it. | Clean (verb) + er = cleaner (n) |
| The suffix "-er" is added at the end of                                                                                                                            | Rob (v) + er = robber (n)       |



|                                                                           |                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| verbs and change them to nouns                                            |                                          |
| The suffix "-ment" is added at the end of verbs and changes them to nouns | Encourage (v)+ment = encouragement (n)   |
| The suffix "-tion" is added at the end of verbs and changes them to nouns | Intimidate (v) + tion = intimidation (n) |

### Grammar Exercise

Use the correct form of the nouns to complete the following sentences.

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ was shot dead by the police. (kidnap+er, kidnap+ment, kidnap+tion)
2. She denied any \_\_\_\_\_ in the case. (involve+er, involve+ment, involve+tion)
3. The young man appealed against the severe \_\_\_\_\_. (punish+er, punish+ment, punish+tion)
4. The ransom \_\_\_\_\_ was rejected by the police. (pay+er, pay+ment, pay+tion)
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the attorney general alarmed the police. (abduct+or, abduct+ment, abduct+ion)
6. She was sentenced to five years' \_\_\_\_\_. (imprison+er, imprison+ment, imprison+tion)
7. A convicted \_\_\_\_\_ was executed in North Carolina yesterday. (murder+er, murder+ment, murder+tion)
8. The new laws have a particular \_\_\_\_\_ to the self-employed. (apply+er, apply+ment, appli+cation)
9. The police think she must have known her \_\_\_\_\_. (attack+er, attack+ment, attack+tion)
10. New \_\_\_\_\_ to prevent the spread of the disease is high on the government's agenda. (act+or, act+ment, act+ion)

## Chapter Twenty

### Rape

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word              | Meaning         | #  | Word              | Meaning      |
|---|-------------------|-----------------|----|-------------------|--------------|
| 1 | Rape (v)          | تجاوز جنسی      | 9  | Unconscious (adj) | از هوش رفته  |
| 2 | Chastity (n)      | عفت، عصمت       | 10 | Drugged (adj)     | تخدیر شده    |
| 3 | Deceit (n)        | فریب، حيله      | 11 | Incapable (adj)   | ناتوان       |
| 4 | Uncommon (adj)    | غير معمول، نادر | 12 | Incompetent (adj) | ناتوان       |
| 5 | To constitute (v) | تشکیل دادن      | 13 | To occur (v)      | اتفاق افتادن |
| 6 | Pedophilia (n)    | لواط            | 14 | Mentally (adv)    | از نظر روانی |
| 7 | Resistance (n)    | مقاومت، مخالفت  | 15 | Adult (n)         | بالغ         |
| 8 | To overcome (v)   | مغلوب ساختن     |    |                   |              |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. She was pulled from her car and **raped** while driving home one late night.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. In Afghanistan, people expect girls to be **chaste** and never have sex before marriage.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. When the newspapers published the full story, all of his earlier **deceits** were revealed.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Accidents due to the failure of safety equipment are **uncommon** nowadays. Fewer people are getting hurt.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The old man was found guilty of **pedophilia**. He had forced at least five young boys to have sex with him.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The woman accused the man of raping her. However, the man claimed that the woman consented to sex since she didn't show any signs of **resistance**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. She was hit on the head by a stone and knocked **unconscious**.

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. The criminals had cut her tongue; therefore, she was **incapable** of testifying against them.

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. The new minister was accused of **incompetence**. He was not knowledgeable or capable enough to do the job.

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. An **adult** under British law is someone over 18 years old.

- a. to force someone to have sex using violence or threatening behavior
- b. not common
- c. grown-up
- d. not having had sex, or only having a sexual relationship with the person whom you are married to
- e. lacking qualification or ability; incapable of doing something
- f. illegal sex between an adult and a child
- g. concealing or distorting the truth to gain an advantage
- h. unable to do something
- i. not conscious
- j. When someone or something resists or fights back



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of rape. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is rape?
2. What are the main elements in a case of rape?
3. Who is a guardian?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. Who can be a victim of a rape?
  - (A) A man
  - (B) A woman
  - (C) A child
  - (D) All of the above can be true
2. What is the punishment for raping an adult?



- (A) Up to seven years in jail
  - (B) Up to 17 years in jail
  - (C) Up to eight years and seven months in jail
  - (D) No punishment
3. What is the punishment for raping someone who is under 18?
- (A) Not more than seven years in jail
  - (B) More than seven years in jail
  - (C) Not more than 10 years in jail
  - (D) More than 10 years in jail
4. What is the punishment for pedophilia (sex with young boys)?
- (A) No imprisonment
  - (B) Maximum anticipated imprisonment
  - (C) Long imprisonment
  - (D) Death sentence



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

In Afghanistan, rape is regarded as a felony. According to the Afghanistan Penal Code, rape is defined as the act of **violating** another person's chastity by using violence, threats, or deceit. Simply, it means forcing someone to have sex with the offender.

Rape is sexual intercourse with someone against their **will**. Rape can occur when a man's or woman's resistance is overcome either by force or by the threat of death or serious bodily harm. Sexual intercourse with a man or woman who is unconscious or intoxicated, drugged, or mentally incompetent and incapable of granting consent also constitutes rape.

The victim of rape can be a woman, man or a child. **Traditionally**, people used to believe only women could be raped; however, men have also been the victim of rape and the Penal Code includes both women and men as possible victims. For instance, some men have been raped in prisons. However, rape by a woman is not included in Afghan law since **it** is very uncommon and it is believed that women cannot rape.

Punishment for rape of an adult is up to seven years in prison. When the victim is under 18 years of age, or when the offender is a guardian over the victim, the maximum punishment for rape is **raised** to a maximum of 10 years' imprisonment. For instance, if a teacher rapes his student, he will receive a maximum punishment



of not more than 10 years in prison. A person who commits pedophilia, or adult sex with a child, will be sentenced to a long imprisonment.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, the word **violating** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Breaking
  - (B) Being against the law
  - (C) Committing
  - (D) Acting
2. In paragraph one, all of the following are stated as elements of rape except
  - (A) Force
  - (B) Deceit
  - (C) Violence
  - (D) Consent
3. In paragraph two, the word **will**
  - (A) Is a word used to show future
  - (B) Is a word used to show possibility
  - (C) Shows what someone wants
  - (D) Expresses a request
4. In paragraph two, what is stated about sexual intercourse with someone who is not mentally capable of giving consent?
  - (A) It constitutes rape
  - (B) It carries a less severe punishment than raping a woman who is mentally incompetent
  - (C) It does not constitute rape
  - (D) It is not mentioned
5. In paragraph three, the main victims of rape were traditionally thought to be
  - (A) Minors
  - (B) Women
  - (C) Boys
  - (D) Men
6. In paragraph three, what does the word **it** refer to in the sentence, "... rape by a woman is not included in Afghan law since **it** is very uncommon?"
  - (A) Rape
  - (B) Rape by a man
  - (C) Rape by a woman



- (D) Consensual sex
7. In paragraph three, the word **traditionally** is closest in meaning to  
(A) According to the beliefs  
(B) According to the customs  
(C) According to some religions  
(D) Both (A) and (B)
8. In paragraph three, what is stated or implied about rape by women in Afghanistan?  
(A) It is very common  
(B) It is very uncommon  
(C) It is not stated here  
(D) It is more common than rape by men
9. In paragraph four, the verb **to raise** is closest in meaning to  
(A) Increase  
(B) Decrease  
(C) Shorten  
(D) Add
10. In paragraph four, the maximum punishment is not more than ten years in jail for  
(A) Raping someone who is not 18 yet  
(B) Raping someone who is above 18  
(C) Raping someone who is under one's control or guardianship  
(D) Both (A) and (C)

### **Rape Case Summary**

A 25-year-old woman named Zhala was walking home from her job in Kabul city in 2005. She was a widow with two young children and she worked as a teacher in a girls' school. It was 1:00 pm. There were no people on the street at that time of the day. A man was following her. There was an abandoned building on the way. When she got near the abandoned building, the man grabbed her and told her that if she screamed she would lose her life. She was terrified. He took her to the abandoned building. Then, he taped her mouth and tied her hands. Afterwards, he raped her and left her there. Two young boys who were playing in the building found the woman nearly dead. They informed the police and they took the woman to the hospital. Later, the police arrested the man by using the information they received from the victim. The woman identified the rapist in a police lineup. He confessed to committing the crime. The man, named Habib, was convicted of rape in the Primary Court and was sentenced to seven years' imprisonment based on article 429 of the Penal Code. He appealed the Primary Court's decision to the Appeals Court, but the Appeals Court confirmed the ruling of the lower court.

### **Questions:**

1. What is this case summary about?
2. What is the sentence in this case?
3. Do you know a similar case to this one? If yes, please write it in the space provided below.

## Grammar

### Tag Questions

#### Tag Questions

In spoken English, people commonly use **tag questions**. Tag questions have two parts: a **statement** and a tag, an added question.

#### Usage:

- If the verb in the statement is affirmative, the tag is negative:
- If the verb in the statement is negative, the tag is affirmative:
- Tags always use a form of **be**; or the auxiliary verbs **do**, **have**, or **will**; or a modal verb such as **can**, **could**, **should**, or **would**. Like a verb, the tag must agree with the subject:
- Answer tag questions the same way you answer yes/no questions. Or, you can answer a tag question by giving information.

#### Examples:

Kabul is a beautiful city, isn't it?

The woman wasn't guilty, was she?

She appealed to the Appeals Court, didn't she?

A: The man wasn't guilty, was he?

B: No, he wasn't.

A: She was abused, wasn't she?

B: No, she wasn't. She was lying.

#### Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs to complete the following tag questions.

1. A man cannot be the victim of rape, \_\_\_\_\_ he? (can, can't)
2. The mentally ill woman was raped by a man, \_\_\_\_\_ she? (was, wasn't)
3. The woman lied about being raped, \_\_\_\_\_ she? (did, didn't)
4. They are being tried for aggravated adultery, \_\_\_\_\_ they? (are, aren't)
5. The judge will announce the beginning of the trial soon, \_\_\_\_\_ he? (will, won't)
6. I am a member of this team, \_\_\_\_\_ I? (am, am not, aren't)
7. The rapist hasn't raped other women, \_\_\_\_\_ he? (has, hasn't)
8. He drinks too much alcohol, \_\_\_\_\_ he? (does, doesn't)
9. She won't accuse her of committing adultery with her husband, \_\_\_\_\_ she? (will, won't)

10. He is not a criminal, \_\_\_\_\_ he? (is, isn't)



## Chapter Twenty One

### Assault and Battery

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word               | Meaning     | #  | Word                  | Meaning        |
|---|--------------------|-------------|----|-----------------------|----------------|
| 1 | Criminal (adj)     | جنایتکار    | 10 | Intelligence (n)      | هوش، آگاهی     |
| 2 | Assault (n)        | حمله        | 11 | Domestic violence (n) | خشونت خانوادگی |
| 3 | Battery (n)        | ضرب و جرح   | 12 | Sibling (n)           | برادر یا خواهر |
| 4 | Injury (n)         | آسیب، صدمه  | 13 | Extended family (n)   | فامیل بزرگ     |
| 5 | Laceration (n)     | جرح، دریدگی | 14 | Victim (n)            | قربانی،        |
| 6 | Permanently (adj.) | دایمی       | 15 | Female (adj)          | مونث           |
| 7 | Handicapped (adj)  | معطل        | 16 | Spouse (n)            | زن یا شوهر     |
| 8 | To deprive (v)     | محروم ساختن | 17 | Inability (n)         | ناتوانی، عجز   |
| 9 | Likewise (adv)     | همچنین      | 18 | Sense (n)             | حس، شعور       |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Zardad was a very dangerous **criminal**. He killed and raped many women.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Several train passengers received serious **injuries** in the crash.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The fight resulted in **lacerations** and cuts to many parts of his body.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. After the car accident, she was **handicapped** and could only move her feet.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. This is a **female**-only beauty saloon. We don't provide services for men.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. I have three **siblings**: two brothers and one sister.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. **Domestic violence** is a big problem in Afghanistan: Women are often beaten and abused by their husbands.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The government has plans to help the **victims** of assault and battery by providing medication and counseling.

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. She lives in an house with her **extended family**. There are her parents, uncles, aunts, and grand parents.

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. Ahmad wants to have a **permanent** job. He is tired of short-term contracts.

- a. lasting for a long time
- b. brothers and sisters
- c. a cut
- d. someone who commits a crime
- e. someone who has been affected by a crime or hurt
- f. physical harm or damage to someone's body
- g. a family that includes parents, children, uncles, aunts, grandparents, etc
- h. not able to use part of your body or your mind because of damage
- i. a woman
- j. violence between people who have an intimate relationship



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of assault and battery. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is assault?
2. What is battery?
3. What is domestic violence?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. Lacerations occur as a result of
  - (A) Battery
  - (B) Assault
  - (C) Assault and battery
  - (D) Both (A) and (C)
2. What is the punishment of assault and battery in Afghanistan?
  - (A) Cash fine
  - (B) Compensation



- (C) Imprisonment
  - (D) All of the above
3. What is the punishment if assault and battery results blinding a victim?
- (A) Long-term imprisonment of not less than ten years
  - (B) Short-term imprisonment of not more than six months
  - (C) Medium-term imprisonment of not less than three years, plus the compensation
  - (D) None of the above
4. Who are the main victims of domestic violence in Afghanistan?
- (A) Women
  - (B) Children
  - (C) Men
  - (D) All of the above



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

Assault and battery, in Afghan criminal law, means an **unlawful** physical attack on another person that results in injuries like cuts or lacerations. **Verbal** threats that do not result in an attack do not constitute assault and battery. Battery is when the victim receives injuries and lacerations,

A person who intentionally beats another person, resulting in any cuts or injuries to the victim, has committed assault and battery, which is a criminal act under Afghanistan's **Penal** Code and is punishable by imprisonment, compensation, and cash fine. If the victim is permanently handicapped or is deprived of one of his senses, such as sight, the offender shall be sentenced to a medium prison sentence of not less than three years, in addition to paying compensation. Likewise, if the **abovementioned** act results in damaging the victim's **intelligence**, the offender shall be sentenced to long imprisonment, not exceeding ten years. If the beating results in the victim's inability to work for more than twenty days, the offender will be sentenced to a short prison sentence of not less than three months, or will be fined an amount not less than 2,000 Afghanis and not more than 3,000 Afghanis.

Domestic violence is a common example of assault and battery in Afghanistan and its victims include spouses (wife or husband), parents (father or mother), children, siblings (brother or sister), and extended family members. Although victims of domestic violence are both men and women, females are the most common victim of domestic violence. In Afghanistan, domestic violence is also normally understood as violence against women.





### Reading Comprehension Exercise

Read the following question and circle the best answer.

1. In paragraph one, the word **unlawful** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Allowed by law
  - (B) Not allowed by law
  - (C) Legal
  - (D) Crime
2. In article one, it can be inferred that if a person says "I will beat you" but does not act upon it, he has committed
  - (A) An battery
  - (B) A felony
  - (C) Assault and battery
  - (D) None of the above
3. In paragraph one, the word **verbal** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Unlawful
  - (B) Lawful
  - (C) Spoken
  - (D) Written
4. In paragraph two, it can be inferred that if an assault and battery does not result in bodily injury or damage, the punishment will be
  - (A) Less serious
  - (B) More serious
  - (C) Very serious
  - (D) More than six months in jail
5. In paragraph two, the word **penal** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Punishing
  - (B) Written
  - (C) Legal
  - (D) Governmental
6. In paragraph two, what does the phrase "**the abovementioned act**" refer to
  - (A) Assault
  - (B) Battery
  - (C) Person
  - (D) Beats
7. In paragraph two, the word **intelligence** is closest in meaning to



- (A) Ability to see
  - (B) Ability to learn or do something
  - (C) Power
  - (D) Knowledge
8. In paragraph two, a person guilty of beating another person, resulting in their inability to work for a period of more than 20 days, will be fined an amount of
- (A) Less than 2,000 Afghanis or more than 6,000 Afghanis
  - (B) More than 2,000 Afghanis or more than 3,000 Afghanis
  - (C) Not less than 2,000 Afghanis and not more than 3,000 Afghanis
  - (D) Not less than 2,000 Afghanis and not exceeding 4,000 Afghanis
9. In paragraph three, all of the following can be the victim of domestic violence EXCEPT
- (A) Children
  - (B) Employees
  - (C) Husband
  - (D) Wife
10. In paragraph three, it can be stated that domestic violence in Afghanistan is known as
- (A) Domestic problems
  - (B) Violence against women
  - (C) Problems
  - (D) Violence

### **Assault and Battery Case Summary**

Haji Anwar, a shopkeeper, had borrowed 20,000 Afghanis from his friend Haji Wali. When Haji Wali went to the Haji Anwar's shop to ask for his money, he said that he could not give him the money this year. They had an argument and Haji Wali beat Hanji Anwar. He was beaten so badly that he couldn't use his right hand for a few days. Haji Anwar went to the police and complained against Haji Wali. Haji Wali was arrested on an arrest warrant and he confessed to beating Haji Anwar. He said he had beat Haji Anwar because he didn't give him the money back. The Primary Court in Jalalabad convicted Haji Wali of assault and battery and he was sentenced to six months in jail. The prosecutor accepted the ruling, but the defendant appealed to the Appeals Court. The Appeals Court reduced the sentence of the lower court and sentenced Haji Wali to three months in jail.

### **Questions:**

1. What is this case summary about?
2. What is the sentence in this case?
3. Do you know a similar case to this one? If yes, please write it in the space provided below.

## Grammar

### Subject Verb agreement

| Subject Verb agreement                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Examples                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The <b>verb</b> must agree with its <b>subject</b> in <b>number</b> and <b>person</b> ; that is, the verb must be the same number and person as its subject.                                                                               | <b>She is</b> a student.<br><b>They were</b> happy.                                                                                |
| The <b>verb</b> , like the noun and the pronoun, has two numbers, the <b>singular</b> and the <b>plural</b> . If the subject is singular, the verb must also be singular. However, if the subject is plural, the verb must also be plural. | <b>An old man was beaten</b> by the muggers.<br><b>Three men were arrested</b> by the police on the charges of murder and robbery. |
| If the <b>subject</b> is the first person, the <b>verb</b> must also be the first person.                                                                                                                                                  | <b>I work</b> in the Ministry of interior as an investigator.                                                                      |
| If the <b>subject</b> is the second person, the <b>verb</b> must also be the second person.                                                                                                                                                | <b>You are</b> the best police officer in this department.                                                                         |
| If the <b>subject</b> is the third person, the <b>verb</b> must also be in the third person.                                                                                                                                               | <b>She works</b> for the Supreme Court.                                                                                            |
| Two or more subjects connected by <b>and</b> take a plural verb.                                                                                                                                                                           | My brother <b>and</b> sister <b>were</b> not involved in robbery.                                                                  |
| A <b>gerund</b> used as the subject of a sentence takes a singular verb.                                                                                                                                                                   | Growing poppy is a crime in many countries of the world.                                                                           |

## Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct words to complete the following sentences.

1. "Where \_\_\_\_\_ your parents live?" the police asked the little boy. (does, do)
2. There \_\_\_\_\_ a hospital nearby and we should take the wounded man there. (is, was)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ the police arrested the man accused of assault and battery? (has, have)
4. A mugger \_\_\_\_\_ arrested by the police red-handed. (was, were)
5. Everyday there \_\_\_\_\_ more than 10 reports of assault and battery cases to the police department. (is, are)
6. One of my friends \_\_\_\_\_ mugged last week on the street late at night. (was, were)

7. Many women \_\_\_\_\_ been victim's of domestic violence in Afghanistan. (has, have)
8. A number of muggers \_\_\_\_\_ been arrested during this month. (has, have)
9. Every person \_\_\_\_\_ entitled to the freedom to choose where to live. (is, are)
10. The man \_\_\_\_\_ in the Afghan National Army. (serve, serves)

## Chapter Twenty Two

### Abortion

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word              | Meaning           | #  | Word               | Meaning             |
|---|-------------------|-------------------|----|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1 | Abortion (n)      | سقط جنین          | 10 | Surgeon (n)        | جراح                |
| 2 | Termination (n)   | ختم، پایان، انتها | 11 | Pharmacist (n)     | دارو ساز، دارو فروش |
| 3 | Pregnancy (n)     | بارداری، حمل      | 12 | Offender (n)       | متخلف               |
| 4 | Fetus (n)         | جنین              | 13 | To administer (v)  | تطبیق کردن          |
| 5 | Miscarriage (n)   | سقط جنین غیر عمدی | 14 | Deliberately (adv) | عمدی، تعمداً        |
| 6 | Physician (n)     | داکتر، طبیب       | 15 | Severe (adj)       | شدید، سخت           |
| 7 | Beating (n)       | زدن               | 16 | Injury (n)         | صدمه، آسیب          |
| 8 | Harmful (adj)     | مضر               | 17 | Disorder (n)       | اختلال، آشفتگی      |
| 9 | Mental health (n) | صحت روانی         | 18 | Risk (n)           | خطر، مخاطره         |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The **physician** said that she needs to take her medicine to feel better.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The **surgeon** operated on the pregnant woman.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. **Abortion**, or the termination of a pregnancy before birth, is illegal in Afghanistan.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The doctor was accused of aborting the **fetus**. If found guilty, he will be imprisoned.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. **Pregnancy** can be very dangerous to young mothers.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. His **mental health** was not good.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Smoking is very **harmful** to pregnant women and their babies.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The **offender** who had committed the crime was caught by the police.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. She received severe **injuries** after the beating.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The **risk** of dying young is very high among smokers.



- a. an unborn baby
- b. a specially trained doctor who performs medical operations
- c. danger
- d. physical harm or damage to someone's body
- e. doctor
- f. a person who is guilty of a crime
- g. health of mind
- h. the intentional ending of a pregnancy, usually by an operation
- i. being pregnant
- j. causing harm



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of abortion. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is abortion?
2. What is the punishment for abortion in Afghanistan?
3. What is the difference between abortion and a miscarriage?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. What is the punishment for abortion if it saves the life a mother?
  - (A) Short imprisonment
  - (B) Cash fine
  - (C) Medium imprisonment
  - (D) No punishment
2. What is the punishment if a woman intentionally has an abortion by means of drugs?
  - (A) Long prison term of not more than seven years
  - (B) Cash fine of not less than 12,000 and not more than 60,000 Afghanis
  - (C) Medium prison term
  - (D) Both (A) and (B)
3. What is the punishment if a woman mistakenly has an abortion because of drugs?
  - (A) No punishment
  - (B) Short prison term



- (C) Cash fine not exceeding 12,000 Afghanis
- (D) Both (A) and (B)

4. What is the punishment if a nurse commits an act of abortion?
- (A) Long prison term
  - (B) No punishment
  - (C) Cash fine not exceeding 60,000 Afghans
  - (D) Maximum punishment



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

Abortion is the intentional termination of a pregnancy before birth, which results in the death of an unborn baby, called a fetus. Some pregnancies fail because the fetus does not develop normally or because the mother has an injury or a physical disorder that **prevents** her from carrying the pregnancy to term. When **this** happens, the failed pregnancy is known as a miscarriage. Other times, abortions are necessary because the pregnancy presents a risk to a woman's health or because the fetus is **likely** to have severe physical or mental health problems. But, an intentional abortion is considered a crime in Afghanistan and is punishable by law, provided that **it** is not deemed necessary by a physician to save the life the mother.

According to the Afghan Penal Code, abortion is considered a felony and is punishable by imprisonment. There are many ways an abortion can be performed. If a person intentionally aborts a human fetus by beating or any other harmful **means**, he/she shall be sentenced to a long prison sentence not exceeding seven years. Also, if a person causes an abortion by using drugs, he/she shall be sentenced to a medium-term prison sentence or shall be fined an amount not less than 12,000 Afghanis and no more than 60,000 Afghanis. However, if the drugs were **administered** by mistake, the offender shall be sentenced to a short prison sentence or fined an amount not exceeding 12,000 Afghanis.

If the person committing the act of abortion is a medical doctor, surgeon, pharmacist, or a nurse, the offender shall be sentenced to the maximum anticipated punishment for the crime. However, if the doctor commits the act of abortion to save the life of the mother, he or she shall not be punished. For example, if a doctor learns that the only way to save the life a dying mother is to abort the fetus and the doctor goes through with the abortion, he or she will not be punished. Finally, if a pregnant woman deliberately uses drugs or other means to have an abortion, she shall be sentenced to a short prison sentence or be fined an amount not exceeding 12,000 Afghanis.





### Reading Comprehension Exercise

Read the following questions and circle the best answer.

1. In paragraph one, the word **prevents** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Permit
  - (B) Stop
  - (C) Help
  - (D) Accelerate
2. In paragraph one, what does the word **this** refer to
  - (A) abortion
  - (B) Some pregnancies fail
  - (C) pregnancy
  - (D) miscarriage
3. In paragraph one, it can be inferred that "miscarriage" is
  - (A) Natural
  - (B) A crime
  - (C) Abortion
  - (D) Pregnancy
4. In paragraph one, the word **likely** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Probable
  - (B) The same
  - (C) Different
  - (D) Like
5. In paragraph one, what does the word **it** refer to
  - (A) Miscarriage
  - (B) Necessary
  - (C) Crime
  - (D) Abortion
6. What can be inferred from paragraph two about abortion?
  - (A) It is a crime no matter what
  - (B) It is not a crime if it is deemed necessary to save the life a mother
  - (C) It is not a crime if the woman consents
  - (D) It is not a crime at all
7. In paragraph two, the word **means** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Use
  - (B) Beating
  - (C) Method



- (D) Illegal
8. In paragraph two, the word **administer** is closest in meaning to
- (A) To assist
  - (B) To manage
  - (C) To avoid
  - (D) To give
9. Based on paragraph three, what will be the punishment for a doctor who causes an abortion for any reason other than saving the life the mother?
- (A) No punishment
  - (B) Maximum anticipated punishment
  - (C) Short-term imprisonment
  - (D) Fine
10. In paragraph three, what will be the punishment if a mother uses drug knowing the consequences of abortion?
- (A) No punishment
  - (B) The maximum punishment
  - (C) Cash fine exceeding twelve thousand Afghanis
  - (D) None of the above

#### **Abortion Case Summary**

Gul Bigum had eight children, two boys and six girls. She didn't want to have any more children since they couldn't afford it. She took contraceptive pills in order to not become pregnant again. Somehow, she forgot to take her medicine and she became pregnant again. Gul Bigum wanted to have an abortion. She consulted her friend and asked her for help. She didn't want to talk about this with her husband, since she knew that he wouldn't allow an abortion. Her friend introduced her to a doctor who performs abortions. When her husband was on a trip, she went to the doctor and had an abortion. She lied to her husband and told him that she had a miscarriage. However, she had a heart attack and died a month later. Later, the husband found out about the abortion and filed a case against the doctor. The doctor was arrested and he was convicted of performing the abortion. The doctor was sentenced to six years in jail. The case was appealed to the Appeals Court, but it the court confirmed the ruling of the lower court.

#### **Questions:**

- 4. What is this case summary about?
- 5. What is the sentence in this case?
- 6. Do you know a similar case to this one? If yes, please write it in the space provided below.

## Grammar

### If Clauses (Conditional Sentences)

| If Clauses (Conditional Sentences)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Examples:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>If Clauses</b> are made of two parts: the <b>if clause</b> and the <b>main clause</b>.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. When the verb form in an "if clause" is in the simple present, the verb in the main clause will be either simple present or future and it describes something that is true in the present or will be true in the future.</li> <li>2. When the verb form in the "if clause" is in the simple past, the verb in the main clause will be "<b>would + simple form of the verb</b>" and it describes something that is untrue in the present or in the future.</li> <li>3. When the verb form in an "if clause" is in the past perfect, the verb in the main clause will be "<b>would have + past participle</b>" and it talks about something that is untrue in the past.</li> </ol> <p>When the "if clause" is used first, it is preceded by a comma.</p> <p>When the "if clause" is used second, after the main clause, no comma is used.</p> | <p><b>If a doctor performs an abortion to save the life a mother</b>, she will not be punished.</p> <p>If a doctor performs an abortion, he/she <b>receives</b> a harsh punishment.<br/>If you commit a crime, you will be punished.</p> <p>If it were not to save the life the mother, the doctors <b>wouldn't</b> perform the abortion.</p> <p>If the doctor <b>had tried</b> hard enough, the patient <b>wouldn't have</b> died.</p> <p>If a doctor administers drugs to a pregnant woman to cause an abortion, he will be sentenced to prison.</p> <p>He will be punished if she doesn't comply with the laws of Afghanistan.</p> |

## Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs to complete the following sentences.

1. If a pregnant woman knows that a certain drug will cause an abortion and takes it, she \_\_\_\_\_ sentenced to short imprisonment. (is, will be, would have been)
2. If my husband agrees, I \_\_\_\_\_ an abortion. (have, am having, will have)
3. If the mugger hadn't beaten her, she wouldn't have \_\_\_\_\_ a miscarriage. (have, had, has)

4. The woman wouldn't need an abortion if she \_\_\_\_\_ too sick. (was, were, will be)
5. If a pregnancy is not carried to term because of an injury to the mother, it \_\_\_\_\_ called a miscarriage. (will be, is, would be)
6. In the United States, a woman cannot have an abortion if a pregnancy \_\_\_\_\_ in its twenty-fourth week. (is, will be, would have been)
7. In most countries of the world, abortion is legal if it \_\_\_\_\_ deemed necessary by a physician to save the life the mother. (be, will be, is)
8. If the doctors had known that the pregnancy was abnormal, they \_\_\_\_\_ an abortion. (would had performed, would have performed, would perform)
9. She would ask her husband to have an abortion if she \_\_\_\_\_ sure that he would agree. (will be, was, were)
10. The pregnant woman wouldn't take one month off to go to India now if she \_\_\_\_\_ decide to have an abortion. (didn't, wouldn't, did)

## Chapter Twenty Three

### Adultery

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word                   | Meaning              | #  | Word                 | Meaning       |
|---|------------------------|----------------------|----|----------------------|---------------|
| 1 | Sexual intercourse (n) | آمیزش جنسی           | 9  | Aggravated condition | حالت مشدده    |
| 2 | Spouse (n)             | زن یا شوهر           | 10 | Non-spousal (adj)    | غیر همسری     |
| 3 | Adultery (n)           | زنا                  | 11 | To commit (v)        | مرتکب شدن     |
| 4 | To publicize (v)       | تبلیغات کردن         | 12 | To have sex (v)      | مقاربت کردن   |
| 5 | To prosecute (v)       | تعقیب قانونی کردن    | 13 | Authority (n)        | اختیار، اجازه |
| 6 | Lash (n)               | دره، شلاق            | 14 | Servant (n)          | نوکر، خادم    |
| 7 | To prohibit (v)        | منع کردن، ممنوع کردن | 15 | Repeatedly (adv)     | مکرراً        |
| 8 | To consider (v)        | ملاحظه کردن          |    |                      |               |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. **Sexual intercourse** before marriage is illegal in many countries of the world.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. He accused his wife of **adultery**. Therefore, he divorced her.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Both **spouses** go out to work and they have hired someone to take care of their children.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The government banned the new TV show because it was **publicizing** immorality.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. In Saudi Arabia, an unmarried person who commits adultery for the first time will receive one hundred **lashes**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Smoking is **prohibited** in all hospitals in Afghanistan.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. He was sent to prison for a crime that he didn't **commit**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Ahmad has hired a **servant** to do the housework. He pays him 10,000 Afghanis.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. She called him **repeatedly**, asking him to help her.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. He was charged with adultery because he was seen **having sex** with a woman who was not his wife.

- a. many times
- b. using a leather whip to punish people
- c. to sleep with someone
- d. sex between people who are not married
- e. to do something illegal
- f. to make information about something generally available
- g. a person hired to do housework
- h. a person's husband or wife
- i. the act of having sex
- j. to officially forbid something



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of adultery. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is adultery?
2. What is the punishment for adultery in Afghanistan?
3. What is a third-degree relative?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. What is the punishment for adultery between a married man and an unmarried woman in Saudi Arabia?
  - (A) Both the man and the woman receive 70 lashes
  - (B) Both the man and the woman are stoned to death
  - (C) The man is stoned to death and the woman receives 70 lashes
  - (D) The man receives 70 lashes and the woman is stoned to death
2. What is the punishment for adultery in Afghanistan?
  - (A) A short prison sentence
  - (B) A long prison sentence
  - (C) Cash fine
  - (D) A medium prison sentence





3. What is an example of aggravated adultery?  
(A) Adultery with a teacher  
(B) Adultery with a friend  
(C) Adultery with a student  
(D) None of the above
4. In which of the following countries is voluntary sex between people over 18 years old outside of marriage not a crime?  
(A) Afghanistan  
(B) Some countries  
(C) Pakistan  
(D) Indonesia



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

According to Afghan law, any married person who has sexual intercourse with another person who is not his or her spouse has committed adultery. Adultery is a crime in some, but not all countries. In some countries, a **single** act of adultery is not commonly punished. However, people who repeatedly commit adultery or publicize adultery may be prosecuted.

Adultery is punishable in all Islamic countries under Sharia law and the punishment for adultery by a married person is more **severe** than the punishment for an unmarried person. For example, in Saudi Arabia, a married man or woman who has committed adultery will be stoned to death, while an unmarried man or woman will receive 70 duras (lashes). While in many countries **voluntary sexual intercourse** between an unmarried man and an unmarried woman of over 18 does not constitute adultery, in Afghanistan **it** is a crime of adultery.

According to the Penal Code of Afghanistan, adultery is a felony and is punishable by a long prison term. The law in Afghanistan defines adultery as non-spousal voluntary sexual intercourse between a married or unmarried man with a married or unmarried woman. For example, Ahmad, 21, is a law graduate. He met Ziba, 24, at a restaurant. They had sex and were caught. They are both guilty of adultery even though **it** was voluntary sex. The law in Afghanistan considers both **parties** involved in sexual intercourse who are not lawfully married guilty of adultery.

In short, sexual relations **outside marriage** is prohibited in Afghanistan and is considered adultery. In certain situations, non-spousal sexual intercourse is considered **aggravated adultery**. **Aggravated adultery** is a serious situation of adultery. For



instance, when a man has sexual intercourse with a woman who is his third-degree relative – relatives whom cannot marry, like an aunt or uncle – he has committed aggravated adultery. Another example of aggravated sexual intercourse is having sex with someone who is under one's authority, such as a student, servant, or someone who is not yet 18.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

Read the following question and circle the best answer.

1. In paragraph one, the word **single** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) A person who is not married
  - (B) Only one
  - (C) One person
  - (D) A man who is not married
2. In paragraph two, it can be inferred that sex outside marriage is a crime
  - (A) All over the world
  - (B) In all Muslim countries
  - (C) Only in Saudi Arabia
  - (D) In Europe
3. In paragraph two, the word **severe** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Simple
  - (B) Easy
  - (C) Difficult
  - (D) Very serious
4. In paragraph two, the expression **voluntary sexual intercourse** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Forced sex
  - (B) Sex without consent
  - (C) Sex with willingness and consent
  - (D) Sex between unmarried people
5. In paragraph two, what does the word **it** refer to
  - (A) Adultery
  - (B) country
  - (C) Voluntary sexual intercourse
  - (D) Sex
6. In paragraph three, what does the word **it** refer to?
  1. Adultery
  2. Voluntary sex



3. Guilty
4. Ziba
7. In paragraph three, the word **parties** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Celebration
  - (B) Political group
  - (C) Person involved
  - (D) Victim
8. In paragraph four, the phrase **outside marriage** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) People who are married
  - (B) When people who are not married
  - (C) When people who know each other
  - (D) When people who don't know each other
9. In paragraph four, it can be inferred that **aggravated adultery** is
  - (A) A less serious form of adultery
  - (B) The most serious form of adultery
  - (C) Adultery between friends
  - (D) Adultery with a teacher
10. In paragraph four, non-spousal sexual intercourse with someone who is not 18 is an instance of
  - (A) Non-spousal sex
  - (B) Non-consensual sex
  - (C) Aggravated adultery
  - (D) A misdemeanor

### **Adultery Case Summary**

Mohammad Dawood and Jamshid went to Mazar-i-Sharif with a girl named Fatana. On the way back to their village, Dawood, who was driving the car, drove the car into the desert. Jamshid left the car with the excuse of going to the bathroom, but Dawood stayed in the car with Fatana and had sexual intercourse with her. When they returned to the village, Fatana asked Dawood to marry her since she lost her virginity. Dawood said no. Fatana's brother takes the case to the district police and the police arrest all three – Jamshid, Dawood, and Fatana – on the charge of committing adultery. After the police interrogations, they were handed over to the primary prosecutor. Both Jamshid and Fatana confessed that Dawood committed adultery with Fatana. However, Dawood denied it. The doctor, commissioned by the Ministry of Public Health, proved that adultery has been committed and the girl lost her virginity. Based on the confessions of Jamshid and Fatana and the report of the doctor, Jamshid, Dawood, and Fatana were convicted of adultery. Jamshid and Dawood were sentenced to ten years and Fatana to seven years in prison according to article 427 of the Penal Code. The defendants can appeal against the rulings of the court.

### **Questions:**

1. What is this case summary about?
2. What is the sentence in this case?
3. Do you know a similar case to this one? If yes, please write it in the space provided below.

## Grammar

### Adjective clauses

**Adjective clauses** (also called relative clauses) are used to identify or add information about nouns. Usually, the adjective clause directly follows the nouns it refers to. These clauses are introduced by a relative pronoun, such as **who**, **that**, **which**, **whose**, **where**, or **when**

#### Using Relative Pronouns in Adjective Clauses

Use **who** to refer to people. It can be used as a subject or object of the adjective clause. In spoken English, **who** is usually used instead of the more formal **whom**, even when it is the object of the adjective clause.

Use **that** and **which** to refer to places and things. They can be used as a subject or object of the adjective clause.

Use **whose** to refer to people's possessions. It can be used as a subject or object of the adjective clause.

Use **where** to refer to a place or **when** to refer to a time. They are used as the object of the adjective clause.

#### Examples

The man **who** is accused of adultery was a school teacher.

Kabul is the city **that/which** was ruined by the civil war.

The man **whose** wife was raped killed himself.

She lived in Herat, **where** she taught English for a couple of years.  
Night is the time **when** more crimes occur.

## Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the best words to complete the following sentences.

4. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ was raped is very sad. (who, whom, whose)
5. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ abused the little girl was caught by the police. (who, whom, whose)
6. The house \_\_\_\_\_ the adultery was committed belongs to a famous politician. (that, where, which)
7. The woman thanked the man \_\_\_\_\_ saved her life. (whom, whose, who)
8. The journalist interviewed the woman \_\_\_\_\_ daughter was jailed for adultery. She said that her daughter had been raped and she was innocent. (who, whose, whom)
9. The picture \_\_\_\_\_ you are looking at belongs to the victim. (that/which, where, whose)

10. The time \_\_\_\_\_ the crime occurred is not known to the police.  
(where, when, that/which)
11. The gun \_\_\_\_\_ the police found at the crime scene was licensed to an old  
businessman. (who, whose, which/that)
12. The crime movie \_\_\_\_\_ we watched last night was interesting. (when,  
which/that, where)
13. The building \_\_\_\_\_ the young girl was sexually abused was searched  
twice by the police. (when, where, who)

## Chapter Twenty Four

### Bribery

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word                     | Meaning                        | #  | Word             | Meaning                  |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------------|----|------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 | Bribery (n)              | ارتشاء، رشوه خواری             | 10 | Chairperson (n)  | رئیس                     |
| 2 | To influence (v)         | ترغیب کردن، تحت نفوذ قرار دادن | 11 | To offer (v)     | پیشکش کردن، ارائه کردن   |
| 3 | Public service (n)       | وظیفه عامه                     | 12 | Permit (n)       | جواز، اجازه              |
| 4 | Public interest (n)      | منافع عامه                     | 13 | To grant (v)     | اعطا کردن، بخشیدن        |
| 5 | Tenderer in bribery (n)  | رشوت دهنده                     | 14 | Corruption (n)   | فساد                     |
| 6 | Solicitor in bribery (n) | رشوت گیرنده                    | 15 | To paralyze (v)  | فلج کردن، از کار انداختن |
| 7 | Bribe (n)                | رشوت                           | 16 | To abstain (v)   | پرهیز کردن، امتناع کردن  |
| 8 | Intermediary (n)         | واسطه رشوت                     | 17 | Equivalent (adj) | معادل، برابر             |
| 9 | Go-between (n)           | رابط، دلال                     | 18 | Strict (adj)     | سخت، محکم، محض           |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Ahmad was accused of **bribery**. He had accepted 20,000 Afghanis as a bribe.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. We follow very **strict** guidelines on the use and storage of personal details on computers.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The minister was found guilty of **corruption**. He had bought a house using government money.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. My friend has suffered from polio and half of his body is **paralyzed**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The best way not to be infected by HIV is to **abstain** from unsafe sex.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The young boy acted as a **go-between**. He delivered messages from his father to his uncle.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Ali was charged for being a **solicitor** in bribery. He had asked Ahmad to give him money to fix his documents.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. As **chairperson** of the company, he can make all the decisions.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. She was **offered** a job in Kabul as a lawyer.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. You cannot build a house here unless you have a **permit** from the municipality.
- a. firm or harsh
  - b. an official document that allows you to do something or go somewhere
  - c. the crime of giving or receiving money or a gift for doing something dishonest
  - d. a person in charge of an organization or a meeting
  - e. illegal or dishonest behavior, especially by people in power
  - f. to tender; to agree to give
  - g. unable to move or to act
  - h. a person who asks for something, for example a bribe or gift
  - i. someone who delivers messages between people who are unable or unwilling to meet
  - j. to not do something; to avoid doing something



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of bribery. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is bribery?
2. What is the punishment for bribery in Afghanistan?
3. What is a solicitor, tenderer and go-between of bribes?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. What is a solicitor of bribes?



- (A) A person who gives the bribe
  - (B) A person who accepts the bribe
  - (C) A person who promises the bribe
  - (D) A person who asks someone for money or other things
2. What is the punishment for the solicitor, intermediary, and tenderer of bribes?
- (A) The same punishment for all
  - (B) Separate punishment for each
  - (C) No punishment for the intermediary, but the same punishment for the tenderer and solicitor of the bribes
  - (D) A long prison sentence for the tenderer and the solicitor of bribes, and a short prison term for the intermediary
3. What is the punishment for bribery by public servants?
- (A) Short-term prison sentence of less than six months
  - (B) A prison term of not less than two years and not more than 10 years
  - (C) A cash fine equivalent to the money or goods given or offered
  - (D) Both (B) and (C)
4. What is the purpose of the strict laws against bribery?
- (A) To stop bribery
  - (B) To encourage bribery
  - (C) To support bribery
  - (D) To disrupt bribery



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

Bribery, under criminal law, is the illegal influencing of a person by paying money or anything of **value**. Bribery is one form of corruption that can paralyze the governmental system in a country. **Thus**, there have been strict laws against bribery in Afghanistan.

According to law in Afghanistan, bribery is regarded as a criminal act against the public interest and the tenderer, solicitor, and **intermediary** in bribery are equally responsible. For example, if a professor solicits a bribe for passing a student through a "go-between" and the briber agrees to pay, all the parties **involved** are guilty of bribery. A tenderer of bribe is a person who offers to pay bribe. A person who is a solicitor of a bribe asks for a bribe. An intermediary for a bribe is a person who acts as a "go-between" between the person paying the bribe – the tenderer – and the solicitor of bribes, delivering messages between the two sides. For example, Ahmad is the chairperson of the Department of Housing in the Ministry of Urban Development.





Fawad wants to build a big house and needs a permit. However, Ahmad does not want to grant the permit without some extra money as a bribe. His secretary, Parvez, acts as a "go between" and passes Ahmad's message to Fawad. As a result, Fawad pays the money to Ahmad. Here, Ahmad is a solicitor, Fawad is a tenderer and Parvez is an intermediary in bribery.

Bribery is punishable by imprisonment of **varying** lengths or a cash fine, depending on the situation. According to the Afghanistan Penal Code, any official in public service who requests any money, goods, or other benefits, or receives a promise or accepts a gift to do something or abstain from performing an assigned duty will be considered a bribe-taker. The bribe-taker, briber, and the intermediary in the bribe shall all be sentenced to an imprisonment of not less than two years and no more than ten years and a cash fine equivalent to the money or goods given or offered.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

Read the following question and circle the best answer.

1. In paragraph one, the word **value** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Importance
  - (B) Something that can be exchanged with money
  - (C) Gifts
  - (D) Precious stones
2. In paragraph one, all of the followings have been stated or implied except
  - (A) Corruption is dangerous.
  - (B) Bribery is a crime
  - (C) Bribery is punishable by imprisonment and a fine
  - (D) A briber is someone who solicits bribe
3. In paragraph one, the word **thus** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) A crime
  - (B) Because of this
  - (C) Because
  - (D) Reason
4. In paragraph two, it can be inferred that a bribery is when
  - (A) A person does something assigned by his boss
  - (B) A person does his own personal work when he is supposed to be at the office
  - (C) A person does not do their jobs because they have received a gift for doing nothing
  - (D) A person ignores his boss's instructions



5. In paragraph two, the "**intermediary**" in the case of bribery is someone who
  - (A) Solicits bribe
  - (B) Offers bribe to a "go-between"
  - (C) Acts as a "go-between" between the person offering and the person receiving a bribe
  - (D) Informs the authorities of the wrongdoing
6. In paragraph two, only one of the following is true about bribery
  - (A) If you pay something of no value to someone, it is considered a bribe
  - (B) Bribery is the crime of offering and accepting a bribe
  - (C) Paying anything other money is not considered a bribe
  - (D) Bribery is not a form of corruption
7. In paragraph two, the word **involved** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Being part of something
  - (B) Being guilty
  - (C) Doing something wrong
  - (D) Being innocent of a crime
8. In paragraph two, Fawad receives a punishment that is
  - (A) Harsher than that of Ahmad
  - (B) The same as that of Ahmad
  - (C) Less than that that of Ahmad
  - (D) The harshest of the two
9. In paragraph three, the word **varying** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Different
  - (B) Same
  - (C) Similar
  - (D) More
10. In paragraph three, it is stated that the fine for bribery is
  - (A) Twice the value of the goods or money offered or received
  - (B) Three times the value of the goods or money offered or received
  - (C) Not less than 10,000 Afghanis and not exceeding 60,000 Afghanis
  - (D) The same as the value of the goods or money offered or received

### **Bribery Case Summary**

Ahmad was working for the Ministry of Finance in 2006. Mohammad Walid, a businessman, came to the ministry to pay for his business tax. He had to pay 200,000 Afghanis to the government. Ahmad told the businessman that he has to pay 20,000 Afghanis to him as a bribe to facilitate his payment. The businessman reported the case to the Anti-corruption Commission. A member of the Anti-Corruption Commission went to the ministry with the businessman. He pretended to be his assistant. The businessman gave the money to Ahmad in the presence of the member of the Anti-corruption Commission. Ahmad was later arrested on the charge of soliciting a bribe. The Primary Court in Kabul convicted him of bribery. He was sentenced to two years in jail and was fined the same amount he received as bribe – 20,000 Afghanis – based on article 255 of the Penal Code. He appealed to the Appeals Court, but the court confirmed the ruling of the lower court.

### Questions:

1. What is this case summary about?
2. What is the sentence in this case?
3. Do you know a similar case to this one? If yes, please write it in the space provided below.

### Grammar

#### *Will, Shall, and Be Going To*

| Will, Shall, and Be Going To                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Examples                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| We use <b>will</b> when we decide to do something at the time of speaking with no prior plan.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | I cannot talk to the Minister about the corruptions today. I <b>will</b> talk to him tomorrow.                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Shall</b> is used to say that something certainly will or must happen, or that you are determined that something will happen. Shall is often used in formal writings, such as laws.<br>In conversation, however, shall is only used with <b>I</b> and <b>we</b> . It is used mostly in the question "Shall I...?", and, "Shall we...?" | None of the citizens of the nation <b>shall</b> be deprived of his Afghan citizenship.<br><br><b>Shall</b> we go?<br><b>Shall</b> I shut the window?                                                                                      |
| In American English, "shall" is not common, and "will" is used instead in all situations. <b>Should</b> is used to ask for advice.                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <b>Should</b> we appeal against the verdict?                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| When we are making a prediction (a statement about something that we think we will do or will occur), we either use will or be going to. However, when we express a prior plan i.e. something we intend to do in the future because in the past we have made a plan or decision to do it.                                                 | Be careful! You' <b>ll</b> hurt yourself.<br>Watch out! You' <b>re going to</b> hurt yourself.<br><br>I talked to the minister yesterday. He is unhappy about corruption in the ministry. He' <b>s going to</b> deal with the corruption. |

### Grammar Exercise

*Fill in the blanks with the correct words to complete the following sentences.*

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ be tried for soliciting a bribe in a few days. (will, shall, shall and will can be used interchangeably)
2. A journalist was talking about corruption in the ministry. He said, "My friends \_\_\_\_\_ publish the evidence in the newspaper as soon as possible." (will, shall, shall and will can be used interchangeably)

3. \_\_\_\_\_ we start the work? We need to inspect everything by the end of the day. (will, shall, are going to)
4. No one \_\_\_\_\_ be deprived of his or her freedom unless by the provision of the law. (will, shall, shall and will can be used interchangeably)
5. The minister said, "We can't tolerate corruption in our ministry and any person found guilty of bribery \_\_\_\_\_ be fired and prosecuted under the law. (will, shall, shall and will can be used interchangeably)
6. The government \_\_\_\_\_ make no law against freedom of speech. (will, shall, shall and will can be used interchangeably)
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ do anything to crack down on bribery and any other forms of corruption in this organization. (will, shall, shall and will can be used interchangeably)
8. The attorney general promised, "The government \_\_\_\_\_ bring the minister accused of soliciting the bribe to justice at any cost." (will, shall, shall and will can be used interchangeably)
9. The state \_\_\_\_\_ abide by the UN charter, international treaties, and international conventions that Afghanistan has signed, as well as the Universal Declaration of Human Rights. (will, shall, is going to)
10. The woman suggested, " \_\_\_\_\_ we go out for dinner tonight?" (will, shall, are going to)

## Chapter Twenty Five

### Robbery

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word            | Meaning                | #  | Word                 | Meaning           |
|---|-----------------|------------------------|----|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1 | Robbery (n)     | سرقت                   | 10 | Pick-pocketing (n)   | کیسه بری، جیب بری |
| 2 | To frighten (v) | ترساندن                | 11 | Belongings (n)       | دارایی            |
| 3 | To threaten (v) | تهدید کردن             | 12 | Goods (n)            | اموال، اجناس      |
| 4 | To persuade (v) | تشویق کردن، وادار کردن | 13 | Similar (adj)        | مشابه             |
| 5 | To seize (v)    | ضبط کردن، توقیف کردن   | 14 | The latter (n)       | دومی              |
| 6 | Weapon (n)      | اسلحه                  | 15 | Provided that (conj) | به شرط اینکه      |
| 7 | Extortion (n)   | اخاذی                  | 16 | Moreover (adv)       | بعلاوه            |
| 8 | Traveler (n)    | مسافر                  | 17 | Passenger (n)        | مسافر             |
| 9 | To acquire (v)  | بدست آوردن، حاصل کردن  | 18 | To consist (v)       | مرکب بودن از      |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The robbers admitted they had committed four recent bank **robberies**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The robber **frightened** the woman by holding the gun to her forehead.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. They **threatened** the shopkeeper with a gun saying she would lose her life if she didn't do what they said.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The robbers **seized** 10 bank employees to use as hostages. They asked for a helicopter so that they could escape.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The police stopped all the cars and searched them for **weapons**. They had reports that somebody was trying to smuggle 100 guns.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. He was found guilty of obtaining the money by **extortion**. He obtained the money from the businessmen by force.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The robbers stopped a big truck and stole 10,000,000 Afghanis' worth of **goods**. The goods included computers and cameras.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. I bought some new shoes which are very **similar** to a pair I had before.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. I put a few expensive personal **belongings** in a bag and left the house.  
Unfortunately, the robbers stopped my car and took all I had.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. All **passengers** on the train were asked to leave the train because of a bomb threat.

- a. to make someone feel fear
- b. looking or being almost – but not exactly – the same
- c. the crime of stealing from someone
- d. items for sale, or the things that you own
- e. a person who is traveling in a vehicle but not the driver
- f. the crime of obtaining something by force or threat
- g. the things that a person owns
- h. to tell someone that you will kill or hurt them, or cause problems for them if they do not do what you want
- i. any object used in fighting or war, such as a gun, bomb, sword, etc
- j. to take using sudden force



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of robbery. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is robbery?
2. What is the difference between robbery and larceny?
3. Who is a robber?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. Which one of the following is considered an act of robbery?
  - (A) Stealing 10,000 Afghanis from your friend's pocket
  - (B) Stealing a bicycle parked on the side of a street
  - (C) Stopping a passenger car on the highway and asking the passengers to give you all their money if they don't want to get hurt



- (D) Stealing your neighbor's laptop from his car
2. Robbery always involves one of the following
- (A) Deceit
  - (B) Love
  - (C) Greed
  - (D) Intimidation
3. What is the punishment if a robber stops a person on the road and takes his money by use of intimidation?
- (A) Cash fine equal to the amount stolen
  - (B) Short prison sentence
  - (C) Medium prison sentence
  - (D) Long prison sentence
4. What is the punishment for initiating an act of robbery?
- (A) No punishment
  - (B) A short prison sentence
  - (C) A medium prison sentence
  - (D) A long prison sentence



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

Robbery is a felony under criminal law. A robbery consists of the unlawful taking of **property** belonging to another person by use of violence or intimidation, which means frightening or threatening someone in order to persuade them to do something that you want them to do.

According to the law in Afghanistan, any person who stands on a public road or other places for the purpose of seizing other people's property with a weapon or similar object is guilty of robbery. Robbery includes one of the following: a) extortion of a traveler; b) acquiring another person's goods by threat; c) murder; d) murder and acquisition of another person's goods. Robbery is different from larceny and theft since the **latter** does not involve violence and **resistance**. Also, pick-pocketing is not considered an act of robbery since it doesn't involve a threat, violence, or intimidation.

According to the Penal Law in Afghanistan, robbery is punishable by prison sentences of different terms, provided that another felony is not committed. For instance, if a person commits murder while robbing a person, he/she will be sentenced to death. Moreover, if a person commits an act of terror during an act of robbery, he/she shall



be sentenced to medium prison term of more than three years. For example, if a robber stops a person on the road and steals his money by using physical threats, the robber will be sentenced to a medium prison term of more than three years. Moreover, if the robber steals additional property, he/she shall be sentenced to a longer prison term. For example, if a robber stops a car and **extorts** the money and other belongings from the passengers, the robber will have a longer prison term. Initiating an act of robbery is also considered a crime and the **offender** shall be sentenced to the **anticipated** punishment of initiating the crime.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following questions and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, the word **property** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Belongings
  - (B) A building
  - (C) When you own something
  - (D) Material
2. In paragraph one, which of the following always exists as a part of a robbery
  - (A) Murder
  - (B) Rape
  - (C) Intimidation
  - (D) Death sentence
3. In paragraph one, it can be inferred that **one** of the following **never exists** in an act of robbery?
  - (A) Intimidation
  - (B) Use of force
  - (C) Consent
  - (D) Using a weapon
4. In paragraph two, the word **resistance** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Being frightened by someone
  - (B) Refusal to give in or accept
  - (C) Combating
  - (D) None of the above
5. In paragraph two, what does the word **latter** refer to?
  - (A) Acquisition
  - (B) Larceny
  - (C) Extortion
  - (D) Robbery





6. In paragraph three, the word **extort** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) To rob someone
  - (B) To use force
  - (C) To obtain something from someone by force or intimidation
  - (D) To intimidate someone
7. In paragraph three, what is the punishment for murder while committing an act of robbery?
  - (A) Continued imprisonment
  - (B) The death penalty
  - (C) A long prison sentence
  - (D) A long prison sentence of not less than 10 years in jail
8. In paragraph three, what does the word **offender** refer to
  - (A) Robbery
  - (B) an act of robbery
  - (C) A robber
  - (D) Initiating an act of robbery
9. In paragraph three, what is the punishment for acquiring property through robbery?
  - (A) Maximum anticipated punishment
  - (B) A long prison term
  - (C) A short prison term
  - (D) A medium prison term of not less than one year
10. In paragraph three, the word **anticipated** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Estimated
  - (B) Long-term
  - (C) Short-term
  - (D) Possible

### Robbery Case Summary

A gang of armed robbers were reported to the police. The police caught one of the robbers based on the information from the victims. That led to the arrest of seven other members of the gang. All the robbers admitted to their crime in the interrogation. The police also confiscated some guns from the robbers. They were tried at the Primary Court in Kabul. The Primary Court found all guilty and six of them were sentenced to 10 years in jail and two others to five years in jail. The Appeals Court overruled the verdict and sentenced one robber to 10 years in jail, five to five years in jail, and acquitted two others.

### Questions:

4. What is this case summary about?
5. What is the sentence in this case?
6. Do you know a similar case to this one? If yes, please write it in the space provided below.

## Grammar

### Infinitives

| Infinitives                                                                                                                                                  | Examples:                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| To form the infinitive, use <b>to</b> and the base form of the verb:                                                                                         | The police asked the woman <b>to show</b> her passport.                   |
| <b>Use of the Infinitive</b><br>Use the infinitive after a <b>be + adjective</b> combination such as <b>happy, willing, ready, prepared, and reluctant</b> . | The woman <b>was happy to find</b> her son after 10 years.                |
| Use the infinitive after certain verbs, including <b>agree, decide, expect, hope, learn, manage, need, try, and want</b> .                                   | The police <b>decided to release</b> the suspect.                         |
| Use the infinitive after certain nouns, such as <b>ability and freedom</b> .                                                                                 | The robbers did not find the <b>chance to escape</b> and were all caught. |

### Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs to complete the following sentences.

- The police decided \_\_\_\_\_ the man who was suspected of robbery. (to arrest, arrest, arresting)
- The man failed \_\_\_\_\_ the robbery to the police. (report, to report, reporting)
- She promised \_\_\_\_\_ again after she was released. (to rob not, not to rob, to not rob)
- Don't forget \_\_\_\_\_ the letter I gave you. (post, to post, not posting)
- The robber threatened the driver \_\_\_\_\_ him the car key. (give, to give, giving)
- The victim managed \_\_\_\_\_ the police after she was robbed. (calling, to call, call)
- I offered \_\_\_\_\_ but she didn't accept. (to helping, helping, to help)
- The teacher persuaded the students \_\_\_\_\_ their homework on time. (do, to do, doing)
- The mugger seems \_\_\_\_\_ a gun. (to have, having, has)

10. The police officer risked \_\_\_\_\_ his life by trying to catch the armed robber. (lose, to lose, losing)

## Chapter Twenty Six

### Drug-trafficking

#### Vocabulary

Review the vocabulary below and try to understand the meaning of each word. Ask your teacher to help you with pronunciation.

| # | Word                 | Meaning         | #  | Word            | Meaning           |
|---|----------------------|-----------------|----|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1 | Drug-trafficking (n) | قاچاق مواد مخدر | 10 | Extraction (n)  | عصاره، عصاره گیری |
| 2 | Distribution (n)     | توزیع، پخش      | 11 | Production (n)  | تولید             |
| 3 | Cultivation (n)      | کشت، زراعت      | 12 | Possession (n)  | مالکیت            |
| 4 | Illicit (adj)        | نامشروع         | 13 | Delivery (n)    | تحويل             |
| 5 | To forbid (v)        | منع کردن        | 14 | Brokerage (n)   | دلالی             |
| 6 | Smuggling (n)        | قاچاق           | 15 | Manufacture (n) | تولید، ساخت       |
| 7 | Narcotics (n)        | مواد مخدر       | 16 | Opium (n)       | افیون، تریاک      |
| 8 | Dissemination (n)    | پخش             | 17 | Drugs (n)       | مواد مخدر         |
| 9 | Concealment (n)      | اختفا           | 18 | Storage (n)     | انبار             |



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

Read the sentences. Guess the meaning of the boldfaced words and phrases. Then match each word or phrase with a definition from the list below by writing the letters in the correct blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The **distribution** of food was not fair. Next time, we need to change the system of giving away resources.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The **cultivation** of poppy is a crime in Afghanistan. The farmers who cultivate poppy are imprisoned.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. He is an **opium** addict. His family wants to treat him but they cannot afford it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. **Concealment** of gun at airport was his biggest mistake. He was arrested for carrying a gun in the airport.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Our company **manufactures** bottled water. We produce 1,000 bottles of bottled water everyday.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. **Drug-trafficking** is a major problem in Afghanistan. The drug traffickers smuggle drugs from Afghanistan to all parts of the world.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. He faces three years in jail for selling **narcotics**, such as heroine.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. He has a big **storage** space for rice. He buys a lot of rice, stores it, and then ships it to Pakistan for a higher price.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Smoking is **forbidden** in this restaurant. There is a "No Smoking" sign at the entrance.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Selling and smuggling **illicit drugs** such as cocaine and heroine are crimes all over the world.
- a. to grow something on land
  - b. not permitted, especially by law
  - c. hiding something, such as a weapon
  - d. to give something out to several people
  - e. a drug made from the seeds of a poppy flower and used for pleasure
  - f. illegal drugs
  - g. a place for storing goods
  - h. an illegal drug such as heroine and cocaine
  - i. to produce goods in large numbers
  - j. trading in illegal drugs



### Listening for Comprehension

*Read the following questions. Then, listen to the lecture that gives an overview of drug-trafficking and take notes while listening. After listening to the lecture, answer the questions.*

1. What is drug-trafficking?
2. What is the law for dealing in narcotics?
3. What does the constitution say about drug-trafficking?



### Listening for Details

*Read the questions below. Then listen to the lecture again. After that, answer the questions.*

1. What does the law say about drug-trafficking in Afghanistan?
  - (A) It is illegal, but not punishable
  - (B) It is illegal and punishable
  - (C) It is neither illegal nor punishable
  - (D) It is supported by the government



2. Which one of the following is punishable by law?  
(A) Production of and smuggling of narcotics  
(B) Cultivation, trafficking, dissemination, and use of narcotics  
(C) Holding or concealing equipment used for processing or producing narcotics  
(D) (A), (B), and (C) are true
3. What is the punishment for a trafficking offense of 10 grams of heroine or cocaine?  
(A) One year and six months' imprisonment  
(B) A prison term of six months to one year  
(C) Cash fine of between 30,000 to 50,000 Afghanis  
(D) Both (B) and (C)
4. What is the punishment for a trafficking offense of 10 grams of opium?  
(A) More than three months' imprisonment  
(B) A cash fine of 500 to 1,000 Afghanis  
(C) Up to three months in prison  
(D) Up to three months in prison and a cash fine of 5,000 to 10,000 Afghanis



### Reading

*Read the following passage that you just heard and be prepared to answer the questions that follow.*

Drug-trafficking is considered a serious crime in most countries of the world. The import, export, sale, distribution, and cultivation of illicit drugs are forbidden and are punishable by law. Afghanistan also has **tough** laws to fight against drug cultivation, trafficking, and distribution. For instance, the Afghan Constitution prohibits the production and smuggling of narcotics.

According to the law in Afghanistan, cultivation, trafficking, dissemination, and use of any illegal drugs are punishable. Furthermore, holding or concealing equipment used for processing or producing the abovementioned drugs is also a crime. Under the law, the production, manufacture, distribution, and possession of narcotics is illegal. In addition, **extraction**, preparation of, delivery, or sale of narcotics is also illegal. Finally, actions involving the brokerage, transportation, importation, exportation, concealment, or storage of any **substance** regarded as an illicit drug is also considered drug-trafficking and is punishable by imprisonment and cash fine. Heroin, morphine, cocaine and any mixture containing these substances are examples of the narcotics.

Carrying less than 10 grams of any of **the above mentioned substances** is considered a drug-trafficking offense punishable by a prison sentence of between 6 months and



one year and cash fine of between 30,000 Afghanis to 50,000 Afghanis. As the amount of drug increases, the imprisonment term becomes longer and the cash fine goes higher. For instance, a drug-trafficking offense involving more than 5 kg of the above mentioned drugs shall be punished by life imprisonment and a cash fine of between 1,000,000 and 10,000,000 Afghanis. However, the punishment for a drug-trafficking **offense** of some illicit drugs is less severe. For example, a drug-trafficking offense involving less than 10 grams of opium is punishable by up to three months' imprisonment and a cash fine of 5,000 Afghanis to 10,000 Afghanis.



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

*Read the following question and circle the best answer.*

1. In paragraph one, the word **tough** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Easy
  - (B) Difficult
  - (C) Strong
  - (D) Good
2. In paragraph one, all of the following are true about drug-trafficking except
  - (A) Drug-trafficking is punishable in Afghanistan
  - (B) There are tough laws against drug-trafficking in Afghanistan
  - (C) Cultivation of poppy is encouraged by the government in Afghanistan
  - (D) Distribution of drugs is a crime
3. In paragraph two, none of the following are true except
  - (A) Concealment of equipment used in production of drugs carries the death sentence
  - (B) The production and manufacture of heroin carries a less severe punishment than that of opium
  - (C) A trafficking offense involving less than 10 grams of cocaine is punishable by six months to one year in jail
  - (D) As the amount of drugs trafficked goes higher, the punishment becomes less severe
4. In paragraph two, the word **extraction** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) The process of producing something
  - (B) The process of removing something
  - (C) Cultivation
  - (D) Production
5. In paragraph two, the word **substance** is closest in meaning to
  - (A) Illicit drugs
  - (B) Material



- (C) Poppy
  - (D) Opium
6. In paragraph two, which of the following is not true about drug-trafficking?
- (A) Drug-trafficking is a crime in Afghanistan
  - (B) The constitution of Afghanistan prohibits the production and trafficking of drugs
  - (C) Trafficking of some drugs carries a less severe punishment than the other
  - (D) Trafficking of morphine is not a crime in Afghanistan since it is not common
7. In paragraph two, it is stated that
- (A) Dealing some drugs is permissible
  - (B) Dealing any mixture containing illicit drugs is illegal and punishable by law
  - (C) Only the sale and distribution of cocaine is a crime
  - (D) Only dealing cocaine, heroin, and morphine is illegal
8. In paragraph three, what does the phrase "**the abovementioned substances**" refer to?
- (A) Illicit drugs
  - (B) Cocaine and heroin
  - (C) Morphine
  - (D) Both (B) and (C)
9. In paragraph three, it is implied that
- (A) The punishment for possession of opium is less severe than some other drugs such as morphine
  - (B) Possession of opium is punishable by imprisonment
  - (C) Possession of opium is punishable by a fine
  - (D) All of the above are true
10. In paragraph three, the word **offense** is closest in meaning to
- (A) A felony
  - (B) A misdemeanor
  - (C) A crime
  - (D) An act which is legal

### Drug-trafficking Case Summary

Noor Mohammad was arrested on a charge of trafficking two kilograms of opium in 2006. The police found the opium in his Toyota Corolla car while doing a routine search in Parwan province. When the police arrested him, they told him that he had the right to remain silent and the right to a defense attorney. During the interrogation, he voluntarily admitted to trafficking two kilos of opium. The Public Security Dewan in Parwan convicted him of drug-trafficking and sentenced him to six years' imprisonment and fined him 600,000 Afghanis. The court also ordered the seizure of the opium and his Toyota Corolla car. He was also told that he can appeal against the ruling of the court.



### Questions:

7. What is this case summary about?
8. What is the sentence in this case?
9. Do you know a similar case to this one? If yes, please write it in the space provided below.

### Grammar

#### Gerunds

| Gerunds                                                                                                              | Examples                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| To form the gerund, add <b>-ing</b> to the base form of the verb                                                     | He was suspected of <b>dealing</b> cocaine.                                    |
| <b>Use of the Gerund</b><br>Use the gerund as the subject of a sentence.                                             | <b>Arresting</b> 200 drug dealers has been a big achievement in our ministry.  |
| Use the gerund as the object of a sentence after certain verbs, such as <b>avoid, stop, continue, and recommend.</b> | He <b>stopped working</b> for the mafia after he was released from the prison. |
| Use the gerund after a preposition, such as <b>for, in, of, and about.</b>                                           | She was jailed <b>for breaking</b> the law.                                    |

### Grammar Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs to complete the following sentences.

1. I want \_\_\_\_\_ because I enjoy meeting people. (travel, traveling, to travel )
2. She admitted to \_\_\_\_\_ hashish but dismissed other charges against her. (smoke, smoking, smokes)
3. The prison guard denied \_\_\_\_\_ drugs to the prisoners. (sell, sells, selling)
4. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ that magazine? (read, reading, reads)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ guns and drugs is a crime in Afghanistan. (conceal, conceals, concealing)
6. The suspect avoided \_\_\_\_\_ the questions asked by the police. (answer, answering, to answer)
7. He is accused of \_\_\_\_\_ drugs to Dubai by air. (traffic, trafficking, to traffic)
8. The police thanked the witness for \_\_\_\_\_ against the criminal. (testify, testifies, testifying)

9. The jury found Ahmad guilty of \_\_\_\_\_ drugs in his house. (store, storing, storage)
10. The police officer told him \_\_\_\_\_, but the smuggler kept running. (to stop, stops, stopping)

# Answer Key

## Unit One

### Chapter 1: Overview of Sharia Law System



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. c
2. f
3. d
4. h
5. a
6. g
7. j
8. b
9. i
10. e



#### Listening for Details

1. D
2. B
3. C
4. A



#### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. A
2. D
3. C
4. C
5. C
6. C
7. C
8. B
9. C
10. D

#### Grammar Exercise

1. are
2. have
3. Do



4. Can
5. should
6. is
7. has
8. Is
9. would
10. may

## Unit One

### Chapter 2: Overview of Afghan Constitutional History



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. b
2. d
3. a
4. f
5. j
6. c
7. i
8. g
9. h
10. e



#### Listening for Details

1. D
2. D
3. C
4. B



#### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. B
2. D
3. B
4. C
5. B
6. D



7. D
8. C
9. A
10. B

### Grammar Exercise

1. Yes, it has.
2. Yes, I do.
3. Yes, he will.
4. No, it hasn't.
5. No, it isn't.
6. No, didn't.
7. Yes, he was.
8. No, he can't.
9. Yes, it does.
10. Yes, they were.

## Unit Two

### Chapter 3: The Loya Jirga



### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. c
2. f
3. a
4. i
5. j
6. g
7. e
8. d
9. h
10. b



### Listening for Details

1. C
2. B
3. C
4. C





### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. B
2. C
3. C
4. B
5. B
6. C
7. C
8. C
9. D
10. A

### Grammar Exercise

1. None of the two
2. Descriptive Adjective
3. Descriptive Adjective
4. Adjective of Quantity
5. Emphasizing Adjective
6. Emphasizing Adjective
7. Indefinite Numeral Adjective
8. Descriptive Adjective
9. Descriptive Adjective
10. Descriptive Adjective

## Unit Two

### Chapter 4: The Parliament



### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. f
2. b
3. e
4. i
5. c
6. h
7. d
8. a
9. j
10. g





### Listening for Details

1. D
2. B
3. D
4. B



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. D
2. A
3. C
4. D
5. C
6. A
7. D
8. B
9. A
10. B

### Grammar Exercise

1. A
2. C
3. A
4. A
5. C
6. A
7. A
8. A
9. C
10. C





**Unit Two**  
**Chapter 5: The Ministry of Justice**



**Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise**

1. c
2. f
3. d
4. a
5. j
6. i
7. h
8. e
9. g
10. b



**Listening for Details**

1. D
2. B
3. B
4. C



**Reading Comprehension Exercise**

1. D
2. C
3. B
4. A
5. B
6. D
7. D
8. A
9. A
10. C

**Grammar Exercise**

1. is not
2. does not
3. has never



4. no
5. no
6. will never
7. did not
8. has not
9. no
10. not

## Unit Two

### Chapter 6: The Executive Branch



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. d
2. e
3. c
4. i
5. b
6. f
7. j
8. g
9. a
10. h



#### Listening for Details

1. C
2. B
3. D
4. C



#### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. A
2. B
3. A
4. B
5. C



6. C
7. D
8. B
9. D
10. D

### Grammar Exercise

1. is going to
2. is going to
3. am going to
4. will be opening
5. will appoint
6. will be talking
7. will make
8. is going to talk
9. are going to vote
10. will be talking

## Unit Two

### Chapter 7: The Taqin



### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. e
2. i
3. b
4. a
5. f
6. h
7. d
8. g
9. j
10. c



### Listening for Details

1. D
2. D
3. D
4. B





### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. A
2. B
3. D
4. D
5. D
6. D
7. D
8. D
9. B
10. D

### Grammar Exercise

1. proper noun
2. collective noun
3. neutral
4. possessive case
5. subject of a verb
6. abstract noun
7. abstract noun
8. neutral
9. proper noun
10. common noun



**Unit Two**  
**Chapter 8: The Judiciary System**



**Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise**

1. d
2. g
3. a
4. f
5. c
6. h
7. j
8. e
9. i
10. b



**Listening for Details**

1. B
2. D
3. C
4. D



**Reading Comprehension Exercise**

1. A
2. B
3. C
4. B
5. B
6. B
7. B
8. B
9. D
10. A

**Grammar Exercise**

1. hard
2. is always
3. has never



4. well
5. very happy
6. never admitted
7. carelessly
8. will probably
9. always wears
10. publicly

### Unit Three

#### Chapter 9: The Primary Courts



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. c
2. h
3. j
4. e
5. g
6. b
7. i
8. d
9. a
10. f



#### Listening for Details

1. D
2. A
3. D
4. C



#### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. D
2. D
3. B
4. C
5. B



### Grammar Exercise

1. by yourself
2. myself
3. ourselves
4. yourselves
5. herself
6. himself
7. herself
8. himself
9. myself
10. themselves

### Unit Three

#### Chapter 10: The Court of Appeals



### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. c
2. i
3. g
4. a
5. e
6. h
7. j
8. b
9. d
10. f



### Listening for Details

1. D
2. D
3. B
4. D



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. B
2. D



3. D
4. D
5. C

### Grammar Exercise

1. Mrs. Ahmadi's
2. wife's
3. boss's
4. sisters'
5. sister's
6. today's
7. child's
8. children's
9. knives'
10. woman's

### Unit Three

#### Chapter 11: The Supreme Court



### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. d
2. b
3. f
4. h
5. j
6. g
7. e
8. a
9. c
10. i



### Listening for Details

1. B
2. C
3. C
4. B







### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. B
2. C
3. D
4. D
5. A
6. B
7. B
8. D
9. C
10. B

### Grammar Exercise

1. a few
2. few
3. few
4. a few
5. little
6. a few
7. a few
8. a few
9. little
10. a little

## Unit Three

### Chapter 12: Special Courts



### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. c
2. f
3. a
4. g
5. e
6. h
7. b
8. i
9. d
10. j





### Listening for Details

1. C
2. D
3. C
4. C



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. A
2. A
3. C
4. D
5. C

### Grammar Exercise

1. homicide
2. rapists
3. suspects
4. witness
5. them
6. suspects
7. police officers
8. victims
9. criminal
10. place



**Unit Four**  
**Chapter 13: Crime in Afghanistan**



**Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise**

1. c
2. a
3. i
4. j
5. e
6. g
7. h
8. b
9. f
10. d



**Listening for Details**

1. B
2. D
3. B
4. A



**Reading Comprehension Exercise**

1. B
2. D
3. D
4. D
5. D
6. C
7. C
8. B
9. B
10. B

**Grammar Exercise**

1. is prohibited
2. prohibits
3. were prohibited



4. can be held
5. was held
6. will be held
7. must be proven
8. proved
9. was convicted

## Unit Four

### Chapter 14: Arrest



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. e
2. c
3. b
4. f
5. g
6. d
7. j
8. i
9. a
10. h



#### Listening for Details

1. D
2. B
3. C
4. D



#### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. B
2. D
3. C
4. B
5. A
6. C
7. A



8. C
9. B
10. D

### Grammar Exercise

1. for
2. but
3. so
4. yet
5. and
6. for
7. for
8. so
9. and
10. or

### Unit Four

#### Chapter 15: Proceedings Before Trial



### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. c
2. f
3. d
4. b
5. j
6. h
7. a
8. e
9. i
10. g



### Listening for Details

1. C
2. B
3. A
4. D





### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. D
2. B
3. B
4. A
5. D
6. A
7. C
8. C
9. C
10. D

### Grammar Exercise

1. been
2. were
3. Are
4. is
5. is
6. are
7. was
8. was
9. were
10. be

### Unit Four Chapter 16: The Trial



### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. b
2. a
3. f
4. c
5. h
6. e
7. i
8. g
9. j
10. d





### Listening for Details

1. D
2. B
3. C
4. D



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. C
2. C
3. D
4. B
5. B
6. B
7. C
8. B
9. A
10. C

### Grammar Exercise

1. they
2. she
3. he
4. his
5. they
6. She's
7. His
8. his
9. mine
10. our



**Unit Four**  
**Chapter 17: Sentencing Options**



**Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise**

1. e
2. c
3. a
4. d
5. i
6. g
7. j
8. b
9. f
10. h



**Listening for Details**

1. C
2. A
3. C
4. B



**Reading Comprehension Exercise**

1. C
2. C
3. C
4. C
5. B
6. C
7. A
8. D
9. C
10. C

**Grammar Exercise**

1. comes
2. was
3. were





4. denied
5. be
6. denies
7. were
8. was
9. murdered
10. will be fined

**Unit Five**  
**Chapter 18: Homicide**



**Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise**

1. d
2. i
3. e
4. j
5. c
6. g
7. f
8. a
9. h
10. b



**Listening for Details**

1. D
2. D
3. B
4. C



**Reading Comprehension Exercise**

1. B
2. A
3. B
4. C
5. C
6. B



7. B
8. B
9. B
10. B

### Grammar Exercise

1. prescribed
2. hurt
3. punished
4. bought
5. poisoned
6. worn
7. caught
8. hung
9. shot
10. struck

### Unit Five

#### Chapter 19: Kidnapping



### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. a
2. c
3. f
4. h
5. i
6. j
7. d
8. g
9. e
10. b



### Listening for Details

1. C
2. C
3. C
4. A





### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. B
2. D
3. A
4. D
5. D
6. D
7. A
8. A
9. C
10. D

### Grammar Exercise

1. kidnapper
2. involvement
3. punishment
4. payment
5. imprisonment
6. murderer
7. application
8. attacker
9. action

### Unit Five Chapter 20: Rape



### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. a
2. d
3. g
4. b
5. f
6. j
7. i
8. h
9. e
10. c





### Listening for Details

1. D
2. A
3. C
4. C



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. A
2. D
3. C
4. A
5. B
6. C
7. D
8. B
9. A
10. D

### Grammar Exercise

1. can
2. wasn't
3. didn't
4. aren't
5. won't
6. aren't
7. has
8. doesn't
9. will
10. is



**Unit Five**  
**Chapter 21: Assault and Battery**



**Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise**

1. d
2. f
3. c
4. h
5. i
6. b
7. j
8. e
9. g
10. a



**Listening for Details**

1. D
2. D
3. C
4. A



**Reading Comprehension Exercise**

1. B
2. D
3. C
4. A
5. A
6. D
7. B
8. C
9. B
10. B

**Grammar Exercise**

1. do
2. is
3. Have



4. was
5. are
6. was
7. have
8. have
9. is
10. serves

**Unit Five**  
**Chapter 22: Abortion**



**Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise**

1. e
2. b
3. h
4. a
5. i
6. g
7. j
8. f
9. d
10. c



**Listening for Details**

1. D
2. D
3. D
4. D



**Reading Comprehension Exercise**

1. B
2. B
3. A
4. A
5. D
6. B



7. C
8. D
9. B
10. D

### Grammar Exercise

1. will be
2. will have
3. had
4. were
5. will be
6. is
7. is
8. would have performed
9. were
10. didn't

### Unit Five

#### Chapter 23: Adultery



### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. i
2. d
3. h
4. f
5. b
6. j
7. e
8. g
9. a
10. c



### Listening for Details

1. C
2. B
3. C
4. B





### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. B
2. B
3. D
4. C
5. C
6. B
7. C
8. B
9. B
10. C

### Grammar Exercise

1. who
2. who
3. where
4. who
5. whose
6. that/which
7. when
8. which/that
9. that/which
10. where

### Unit Five Chapter 24: Bribery



### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. c
2. a
3. e
4. g
5. j
6. i
7. h
8. d
9. f
10. b







### Listening for Details

1. D
2. A
3. D
4. A



### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. B
2. C
3. B
4. C
5. C
6. B
7. A
8. B
9. A
10. D

### Grammar Exercise

1. will
2. will
3. Shall
4. shall
5. will
6. shall
7. will
8. will
9. shall
10. shall



**Unit Five**  
**Chapter 25: Robbery**



**Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise**

1. c
2. a
3. h
4. j
5. i
6. f
7. d
8. b
9. g
10. e



**Listening for Details**

1. C
2. D
3. C
4. B



**Reading Comprehension Exercise**

1. A
2. C
3. C
4. B
5. B
6. C
7. B
8. D
9. B
10. A

**Grammar Exercise**

1. to arrest
2. to report
3. not to rob



4. to post
5. to give
6. to call
7. to help
8. to do
9. to have
10. losing

## Unit Five

### Chapter 26: Drug-trafficking



#### Pre-listening Vocabulary Exercise

1. d
2. a
3. e
4. c
5. i
6. j
7. h
8. g
9. b
10. f



#### Listening for Details

1. B
2. D
3. D
4. D



#### Reading Comprehension Exercise

1. C
2. C
3. C
4. B
5. B
6. D



7. B
8. D
9. D
10. C

#### Grammar Exercise

1. to travel
2. smoking
3. selling
4. read
5. concealing
6. answering
7. trafficking
8. testifying
9. storing
10. to stop